

IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

Application of Davis-Dang Hoang Nhan
Serial No. 10/699,193
Filed October 31, 2003
Confirmation No. 3474
For STRETCHABLE ABSORBENT ARTICLE
Examiner Melanie J. Hand

Art Unit 3761

APPEAL BRIEF

Richard L. Bridge, Reg. No. 40,529
ARMSTRONG TEASDALE LLP
One Metropolitan Square, 26th Floor
St. Louis, Missouri 63102
(314) 621-5070

TABLE OF CONTENTS

I.	REAL PARTY IN INTEREST	1
II.	RELATED APPEALS AND INTERFERENCES	1
III.	STATUS OF CLAIMS	1
IV.	STATUS OF AMENDMENTS	2
V.	SUMMARY OF CLAIMED SUBJECT MATTER	2
VI.	GROUND OF REJECTION TO BE REVIEWED ON APPEAL	3
VII.	ARGUMENT	3
	Claims 1-4 and 17-21 are submitted to be unanticipated by and patentable over U.S. Patent No. 5,496,429 (Hasse et al.)	
	CONCLUSION	8
VIII.	CLAIMS APPENDIX	9
IX.	EVIDENCE APPENDIX	14
X.	RELATED PROCEEDINGS APPENDIX	15

IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

Application of Davis-Dang Hoang Nhan
Serial No. 10/699,193
Filed October 31, 2003
Confirmation No. 3474
For STRETCHABLE ABSORBENT ARTICLE
Examiner Melanie J. Hand

Art Unit 3761

August 22, 2008

APPEAL BRIEF

This is an appeal from the final rejection of the claims of the above-referenced application made in the final Office action dated March 28, 2008. A Notice of Appeal was filed on June 23, 2008.

I. REAL PARTY IN INTEREST

The real party in interest in connection with the present appeal is Kimberly-Clark Worldwide, Inc. of 401 N. Lake Street, Neenah, Wisconsin 54957-0349, a corporation of the state of Delaware, owner of a 100 percent interest in the pending application.

II. RELATED APPEALS AND INTERFERENCES

Appellants are not aware of any pending appeals, which may be related to, directly affect or be directly affected by, or have a bearing on, the Board's decision in the pending appeal.

III. STATUS OF CLAIMS

Claims 1-14, 17-21, and 114 are currently pending in the application for consideration. Claims 15, 16, and 22-29 were withdrawn from consideration and claims 30-113 were cancelled

during prosecution. A copy of the claims involved in this appeal appears in the Claims Appendix of this Brief.

Claims 1-14, 17-21 and 114 stand rejected.

The rejections of claims 1-4 and 17-21 are being appealed.

IV. STATUS OF AMENDMENTS

No amendments have been filed after the final rejection.

V. SUMMARY OF CLAIMED SUBJECT MATTER

The following summary correlates claim elements to specific embodiments described in the application specification, but does not in any manner limit claim interpretation. Rather, the following summary is provided only to facilitate the Board's understanding of the subject matter of this appeal.

With reference to the present specification and drawings, claim 1 is directed to an absorbent article 20 comprising a stretchable substrate 40 (or 42) and an absorbent composite 44. See paragraph [0041], page 10 and Figs. 4, 5 and 7-10. The absorbent composite 44 comprises a layer 202 of adhesive composition in contact with the stretchable substrate 40 (or 42) and a layer 204 of particulate superabsorbent material applied to and held by the adhesive composition. See paragraph [0064], page 21 and Figs. 4, 5 and 7-9. The absorbent composite 44 is secured to the substrate 40 (or 42) by the adhesive composition. See paragraph [0064], page 21 and Figs. 4, 5 and 7-9. The absorbent article 20 is stretchable. See paragraph [00122], page 48 and Figs. 11-13. The layer 204 of particulate superabsorbent material remains secured to the substrate 40 (or 42) by the adhesive upon stretching of the absorbent article 20. See paragraph [00122], page 48.

VI. GROUNDS OF REJECTION TO BE REVIEWED ON APPEAL

- A. Appellants appeal the rejections of claims 1-4 and 17-21 under 35 U.S.C. § 102(b) as being anticipated by U.S. Patent No. 5,496,429 (Hasse et al.).

VII. ARGUMENT

- A. Claims 1-4 and 17-21 are submitted to be unanticipated by and patentable over U.S. Patent No. 5,496,429 (Hasse et al.)

Claims 1-4, 17, 18 and 20

Claim 1

Claim 1 is directed to an absorbent article comprising:
a stretchable substrate; and
an absorbent composite comprising a layer of adhesive composition in contact with the stretchable substrate and a layer of particulate superabsorbent material applied to and held by the adhesive composition, the absorbent composite being secured to the substrate by the adhesive composition, the absorbent article being stretchable, the layer of particulate superabsorbent material remaining secured to the substrate by said adhesive upon stretching of the absorbent article.

Claim 1 is submitted to be unanticipated by and patentable over U.S. Patent No. 5,496,429 (Hasse et al.), in that Hasse et al. fail to show or suggest an absorbent article having 1) a stretchable substrate and 2) an absorbent composite comprising a layer of adhesive composition in contact with the stretchable substrate and a layer of particulate superabsorbent material applied to and held by an adhesive composition.

As shown in Figs. 2, 10 and 11, Hasse et al. disclose an absorbent article having a chassis 14 and an absorbent assembly 22, which is formed separate from and attached to the chassis.

The chassis 14 comprises an outer layer 48 and elastic ear flap members 90 secured inward of longitudinal side regions 88 of the outer layer. The absorbent assembly 22 comprises a topsheet 24, a backsheet 26 (characterized in the final Office action as the recited substrate), and an absorbent core 28 (characterized in the final Office action as the recited absorbent composite) sandwiched between the topsheet and the backsheet.

Hasse et al. fail to teach or suggest a stretchable substrate as recited in claim 1.

Nowhere do Hasse et al. disclose that the backsheet (26) disclosed therein is stretchable. Rather, Hasse et al. disclose that the backsheet can be formed from thermoplastic films of polyethylene or polypropylene. Based on this disclosure, the Office asserts that thermoplastic polyethylene is inherently "stretchable because it is an elastomeric material." See page 2 of the final Office action.

However, no evidentiary support is provided by the Office in support of its position. In fact, polyethylene and polypropylene films are not necessarily elastomeric or even stretchable. For example, see col. 16, lines 64 and 65 of U.S. Patent No. 6,521,085, which discloses a nonstretchable bag that can be made of polyethylene or polypropylene. See also col. 3, lines 32-34 of U.S. Patent No. 6,315,748, which discloses a nonstretchable polyethylene film.

In the passage cited by the Office (col. 20, lines 56-59), Hasse et al. teach that the backsheet is preferably manufactured from a polyethylene or polypropylene film. But at lines 48-53 Hasse et al. explain that this is to render the film flexible, which is not the same as stretchable. Thus, the Office's assumption that the backsheet disclosed by Hasse et al. must be

stretchable merely because it can be formed from polyethylene or polypropylene is unfounded and cannot be maintained.

Moreover, implicit in Hasse et al. is that the backsheet disclosed therein is nonstretchable. Particularly, Hasse et al. add that the elasticized leg cuffs (32) are free from the backsheet so that the backsheet does not inhibit the leg cuffs. See column 21, lines 1-8. In other words, the elasticized leg cuffs are unsecured to the backsheet of Hasse et al. because a non-stretchable backsheet would inhibit the leg cuffs from stretching. Thus, not only do Hasse et al. fail to teach or suggest that the backsheet is stretchable but they also infer that the backsheet is not stretchable.

Accordingly, Hasse et al. fail to teach or suggest a stretchable substrate as recited in claim 1.

Hasse et al. fail to teach or suggest a layer of particulate superabsorbent material applied to and held by an adhesive composition as recited in claim 1.

Hasse et al. also fail to disclose that the adhesive securing the absorbent core to the backsheet has a layer of particulate superabsorbent material applied to it as recited in claim 1. As noted by the Office, Hasse et al. at column 20, lines 20-25 discloses that the backsheet (26) can be adhesively secured to the absorbent core and it is recognized that the absorbent core of Hasse et al. can include superabsorbent polymers (see column 19, line 26) or absorbent gelling material as one of its components. Superabsorbent polymers and absorbent gelling material are most often used in absorbent cores in combination with other absorbent materials (e.g., wood pulp, cellulose wadding, coform) that are also disclosed in Hasse et al. In fact, Hasse et al. states that the "absorbent core 28 is preferably a batt of airfelt and particles of absorbent gelling

material." See column 19, lines 65-67. Typically, superabsorbent polymers and absorbent gelling material are dispersed throughout the airfelt and not arranged in a layer. For example, see paragraph [0004] of applicants' specification. For other examples, see U.S. Patent Nos. 4,610,678; 4,673,402; 4,834,735; and 4,888,231, which are disclosed by Hasse et al. as teaching exemplary absorbent structures that could be used as the absorbent core. See column 19, lines 50-65. Each of these patents discloses an absorbent core having a fibrous web with discrete hydrogel particles dispersed therein. Adhering a fibrous web having discrete hydrogel particles, superabsorbent polymers and/or absorbent gelling material dispersed therein to a backsheet does not anticipate claim 1. The particles dispersed in the web are not in a layer nor are they applied directly to and held by adhesive on the backsheet.

The Office has taken the position that if superabsorbent gelling material is the only material used to form the absorbent core of Hass et al., then Hasse et al. would necessarily teach that the superabsorbent gelling material is adhered in a layer to the substrate. See pages 2 and 3 of the final Office action. However, nowhere do Hasse et al. teach or even suggest that the superabsorbent gelling materials disclosed therein are used alone to form the absorbent core as opined by the Office. Rather, Hasse et al.'s disclosure, when taken as a whole, merely describes various conventional absorbent cores that may include superabsorbent gelling materials dispersed within other materials (e.g., airfelt). See col. 19 and 20 of Hasse et al.

As a result, Hasse et al. fail to teach or suggest a layer of particulate superabsorbent material being applied to and held by an adhesive composition as recited in claim 1.

For these reasons, claim 1 is submitted to be unanticipated by and patentable over Hasse et al. Claims 2-4, 17, 18, and 20 depend directly or indirectly from claim 1 and are submitted to be patentable over Hasse et al. for the same reasons as claim 1.

Claim 19

Claim 19 depends from claim 1 and further recites that the stretchable substrate is elastic. As asserted above with respect to claim 1, Hasse et al. do not disclose a stretchable substrate and therefore cannot disclose an elastic substrate. The passage of Hasse et al. relied on by the Office (i.e., column 20, lines 48-53) discloses that the backsheet may be formed from thermoplastic films of polyethylene or polypropylene. These films, as set forth above, are not necessarily stretchable and therefore are not necessarily elastic. Elastic means that upon application of an elongating force, a material (or substrate) is elongatable (i.e., stretchable) in at least one direction and retracts to dimensions close to its original dimensions (e.g., within at least about 25 percent) upon removal of the elongating force. See page 17, paragraph [0056] of the present specification. Thus, Hasse et al. fail to teach or suggest that the backsheet disclosed therein is elastic.

Accordingly, Hasse et al. fail to teach or suggest an elastic substrate as recited in claim 19. As a result, claim 19 is submitted to be further patentable over Hasse et al.

Claim 21

Claim 21 depends from claim 1 and recites, in part, that the absorbent article further comprises a second layer of particulate superabsorbent material being applied to and held by a second layer of adhesive composition. Since Hasse et al. fail altogether to disclose or suggest a layer of particulate superabsorbent material applied to and held by a layer of adhesive composition (as explained in detail with respect to claim 1), Hasse et al. must fail to disclose or suggest a second layer of particulate superabsorbent material being applied to and held by the second layer of adhesive composition.

Thus, claim 21 is submitted to be further patentable over Hasse et al.

CONCLUSION

For the reasons stated above, appellants respectfully request that the Office's rejections be reversed and that claims 1-29 and 114 be allowed.

Respectfully submitted,

/Richard L. Bridge/

Richard L. Bridge, Reg. No. 40,529
ARMSTRONG TEASDALE LLP
One Metropolitan Square, 26th Floor
St. Louis, Missouri 63102
(314) 621-5070

RLB/PEB/tmg
Via EFS

VIII. CLAIMS APPENDIX

1. An absorbent article comprising:

a stretchable substrate; and

an absorbent composite comprising a layer of adhesive composition in contact with the stretchable substrate and a layer of particulate superabsorbent material applied to and held by the adhesive composition, the absorbent composite being secured to the substrate by the adhesive composition, the absorbent article being stretchable, the layer of particulate superabsorbent material remaining secured to the substrate by said adhesive upon stretching of the absorbent article.

2. An absorbent article as set forth in claim 1 wherein the stretchable substrate is a first stretchable substrate, the absorbent article further comprising a second stretchable substrate in generally superposed relationship with the first stretchable substrate whereby the absorbent composite is disposed between said first and second stretchable substrates.

3. An absorbent article as set forth in claim 1 wherein the layer of adhesive composition is a first layer of adhesive composition, the absorbent article further comprising a second layer of adhesive composition applied to the layer of particulate superabsorbent material.

4. An absorbent article as set forth in claim 3 wherein the stretchable substrate is a first stretchable substrate, the absorbent article further comprising a second stretchable substrate in generally superposed relationship with the first stretchable substrate and secured to the second layer of adhesive composition to thereby secure the absorbent composite to said second stretchable substrate.

5. An absorbent article as set forth in claim 1 wherein the adhesive composition comprises a hot-melt adhesive.

6. An absorbent article as set forth in claim 1 wherein the adhesive composition has a viscosity of less than about 10,000 centipoises at a temperature of less than or equal to about 400 degrees Fahrenheit (about 204 degrees Celsius).

7. An absorbent article as set forth in claim 6 wherein the adhesive composition has a viscosity of less than about 10,000 centipoises at a temperature of less than or equal to about 300 degrees Fahrenheit (about 149 degrees Celsius).

8. An absorbent article as set forth in claim 7 wherein the adhesive composition has a viscosity of less than about

10,000 centipoises at a temperature of less than or equal to about 250 degrees Fahrenheit (about 121 degrees Celsius).

9. An absorbent article as set forth in claim 6 wherein the adhesive composition has a viscosity in the range of about 1,000 to about 8,000 centipoises at a temperature of about 300 degrees Fahrenheit (about 149 degrees Celsius).

10. An absorbent article as set forth in claim 9 wherein the adhesive composition has a viscosity in the range of about 2,000 to about 6,000 centipoises at a temperature of about 300 degrees Fahrenheit (about 149 degrees Celsius).

11. An absorbent article as set forth in claim 1 wherein the adhesive composition has a storage modulus (G') of less than or equal to about 1.0×10^7 dyne/cm² at 25 degrees Celsius.

12. An absorbent article as set forth in claim 11 wherein the adhesive composition has a storage modulus (G') in the range of about 1.0×10^5 to about 1.0×10^6 dyne/cm² at 25 degrees Celsius.

13. An absorbent article as set forth in claim 6 wherein the adhesive composition has a storage modulus (G') of less than about 1.0×10^7 dyne/cm² at 25 degrees Celsius.

14. An absorbent article as set forth in claim 13 wherein the adhesive composition has a storage modulus (G') in the range of about 1.0×10^5 to about 1.0×10^6 dyne/cm² at 25 degrees Celsius.

17. An absorbent article as set forth in claim 1 wherein the absorbent composite further comprises hydrophilic fibers.

18. An absorbent article as set forth in claim 1 wherein the absorbent composite has a width and a length, said absorbent composite having a non-uniform basis weight across at least a portion of at least one of the width and the length of said absorbent composite.

19. An absorbent article as set forth in claim 1 wherein the stretchable substrate is elastic.

20. An absorbent article as set forth in claim 1 wherein the stretchable substrate defines an outer cover of the absorbent article, the absorbent article further comprising a liquid permeable liner in generally superposed relationship with the outer cover and adapted for contiguous relationship with the wearer's skin, the absorbent composite being disposed between the liner and the outer cover.

21. An absorbent article as set forth in claim 1 wherein the layer of adhesive composition is a first layer of adhesive composition and the layer of particulate superabsorbent material is a first layer of particulate superabsorbent material, the absorbent article further comprising a second layer of adhesive composition applied to the first layer of particulate superabsorbent material, the second layer of particulate superabsorbent material being applied to and held by the second layer of adhesive composition.

114. An absorbent article as set forth in claim 1 wherein the adhesive composition comprises at least one tackifier, said at least one tackifier comprising about 30 to about 65 percent by weight of the adhesive composition.

IX. EVIDENCE APPENDIX

U.S. Patent Nos. 6,521,085; 6,315,748; 4,610,678; 4,673,402; 4,834,735; and 4,888,231 are being relied on by the Appellants to support their positions set forth above. Each of these patents was previously relied on by Appellants in a Response to Office Action filed December 31, 2007.

X. RELATED PROCEEDINGS APPENDIX

None.

(12) **United States Patent**
Kumamoto et al.

(10) **Patent No.:** **US 6,521,085 B2**
(45) **Date of Patent:** **Feb. 18, 2003**

(54) **PULP MOLDED ARTICLE**

(75) **Inventors:** Yoshiaki Kumamoto, Haga-gun (JP); Kenichi Otani, Haga-gun (JP); Shinji Otakura, Haga-gun (JP); Tokuo Tsuura, Haga-gun (JP); Masataka Ishikawa, Haga-gun (JP); Toshiyuki Suga, Haga-gun (JP); Akira Nonomura, Haga-gun (JP)

(73) **Assignee:** Kao Corporation, Tokyo (JP)

(*) **Notice:** Subject to any disclaimer, the term of this patent is extended or adjusted under 35 U.S.C. 154(b) by 0 days.

(21) **Appl. No.:** 09/885,982

(22) **Filed:** Jun. 22, 2001

(65) **Prior Publication Data**

US 2001/0040016 A1 Nov. 15, 2001

Related U.S. Application Data

(62) Division of application No. 09/622,043, filed as application No. PCT/JP99/00775 on Feb. 22, 1999.

(30) **Foreign Application Priority Data**

Feb. 23, 1998	(JP)	10-40597
Feb. 23, 1998	(JP)	10-40697
Feb. 23, 1998	(JP)	10-40699
May 29, 1998	(JP)	10-186768
Sep. 17, 1998	(JP)	10-262970
Sep. 29, 1998	(JP)	10-275256
Dec. 28, 1998	(JP)	10-373716
Dec. 28, 1998	(JP)	10-373717
Feb. 5, 1999	(JP)	11-29290

- (51) **Int. Cl.⁷** D21J 7/00
(52) **U.S. Cl.** 162/130; 162/149; 162/219; 162/228; 162/231; 428/34.2
(58) **Field of Search** 162/115, 116, 162/117, 13, 218-230, 387-416, 123-133, 231; 264/493, 495, 86, 87, 299, 301, 306, 313, 315, 319; 428/35.6, 542.8, 34.2

(56) **References Cited**

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

2,100,396	A *	11/1937	Heymann	162/219
2,881,669	A *	4/1959	Thomas et al.	162/130
3,594,273	A *	7/1971	Williams	162/219
3,802,963	A *	4/1974	Lee et al.	162/219
3,954,555	A *	5/1976	Kole et al.	162/136
4,455,195	A *	6/1984	Kinsley	162/13
4,798,694	A *	1/1989	Sugata et al.	204/60
4,871,643	A *	10/1989	Tamagawa et al.	430/138
5,047,121	A *	9/1991	Kochar	162/146
5,167,813	A *	12/1992	Iwata et al.	210/219
5,242,546	A *	9/1993	Evans et al.	162/146
5,972,169	A *	10/1999	Bodary et al.	162/218

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

JP	42-9086	5/1967
JP	47-25257	8/1972

(List continued on next page.)

OTHER PUBLICATIONS

T. Goto, Public Relations Department, Kao Corporation, 4 pages, "Paper-Bottle Molding System", Oct. 25, 2000 (With English Translation).

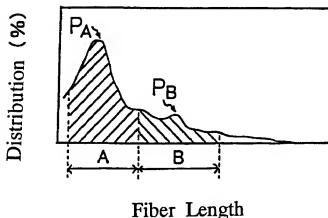
(List continued on next page.)

Primary Examiner—Steven P. Griffin
Assistant Examiner—Eric Hug
(74) *Attorney, Agent, or Firm*—Obalon, Spivak, McClelland, Maier & Neustadt, P.C.

(57) **ABSTRACT**

A method for producing a pulp molded article (7) comprising the steps of supplying a pulp slurry into the cavity (1) of a mold (10) composed of a set of splits (3 and 4) the set of splits (3 and 4) being assembled together to form the cavity (1) with a prescribed configuration, to form a pulp deposited body (5), feeding a fluid into the cavity (1) to press the pulp deposited body (5) onto the inner wall of the cavity (1) for dewatering.

3 Claims, 10 Drawing Sheets



FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

JP	48-50003	7/1973
JP	50-149460	5/1974
JP	51-139838	12/1976
JP	52-128412	10/1977
JP	54-133972	10/1979
JP	61-174500	8/1986
JP	8-92900	4/1996
JP	8-232200	9/1996
JP	9-309153	12/1997
JP	9-316800	12/1997
JP	10-46500	2/1998
JP	10-131100	5/1998
JP	8-158299	6/1999

OTHER PUBLICATIONS

U.S. patent application Ser. No. 09/885,982, Kumamoto, filed Jun. 22, 2001, pending.

U.S. patent application Ser. No. 09/889,566, Nonumura, filed Jul. 30, 2001, pending.

U.S. patent application Ser. No. 09/503,083, Nonomura, filed Feb. 14, 2000, pending.

U.S. patent application Ser. No. 09/622,040, Otakura, filed Aug. 23, 2000, pending.

U.S. patent application Ser. No. 09/622,043, Kumamoto, filed Oct. 10, 2000, pending.

U.S. patent application Ser. No. 09/713,230, Nonomura, filed Nov. 16, 2000, pending.

U.S. patent application Ser. No. 09/885,982, Kumamoto, filed Jun. 22, 2001, pending.

* cited by examiner

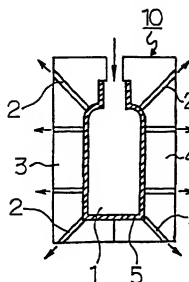
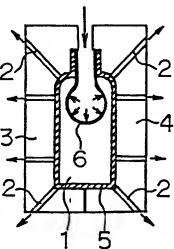
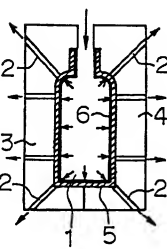
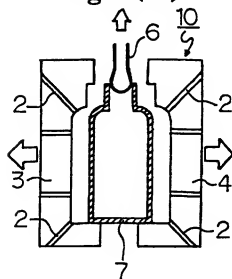
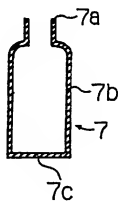
Fig.1 (a)**Fig.1 (b)****Fig.1 (c)****Fig.1 (d)****Fig.1 (e)**

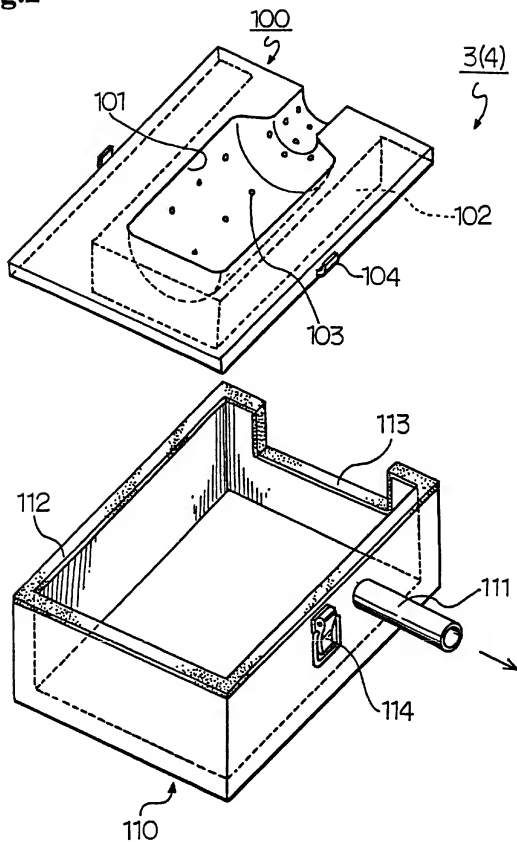
Fig.2

Fig.3

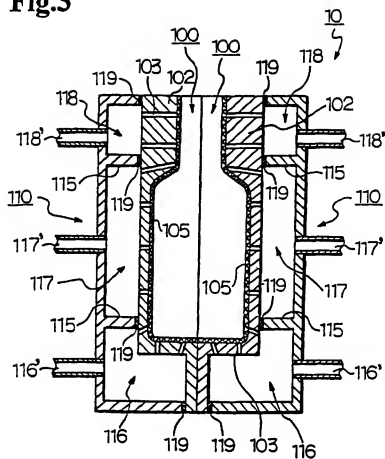


Fig.4

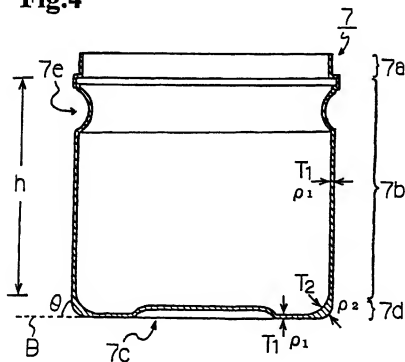


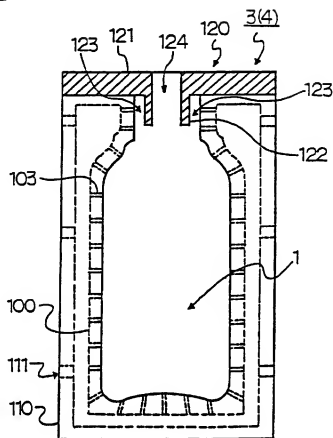
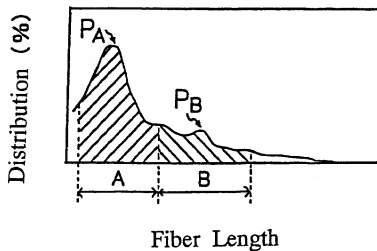
Fig.5**Fig.6**

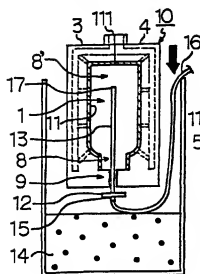
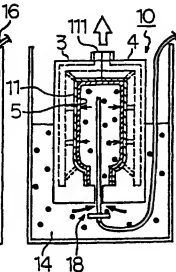
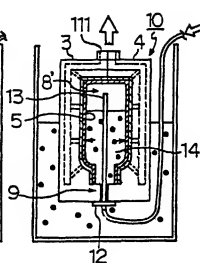
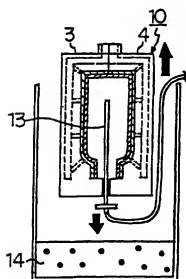
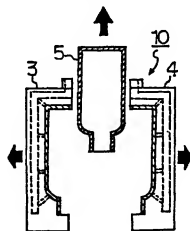
Fig.7 (a)**Fig.7 (b)****Fig.7 (c)****Fig.7 (d)****Fig.7 (e)**

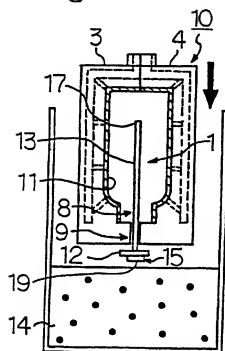
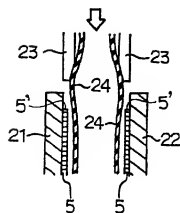
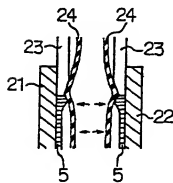
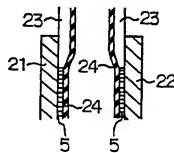
Fig.8**Fig.9 (a)****Fig.9 (b)****Fig.9 (c)**

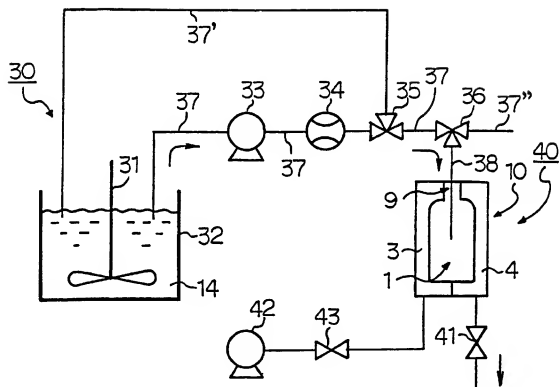
Fig.10

Fig.11 (a)

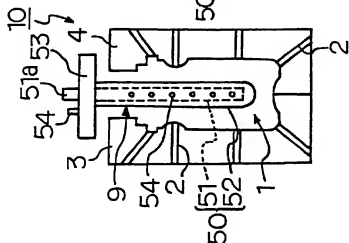


Fig.11 (b)

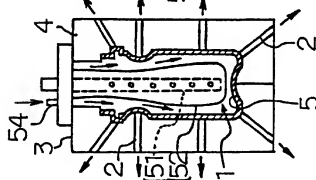


Fig.11 (c)

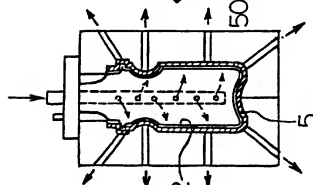


Fig.11 (d)

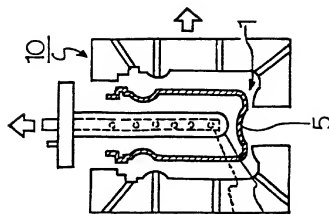


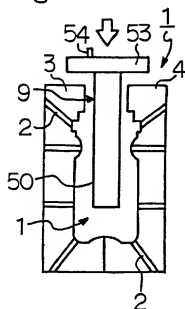
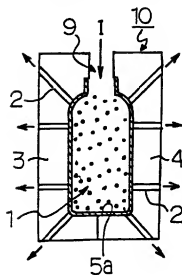
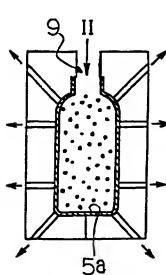
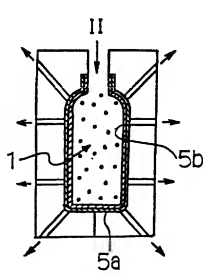
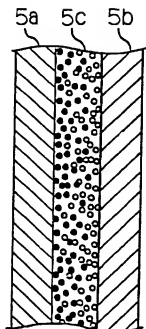
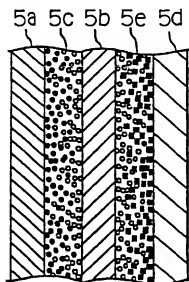
Fig.12**Fig.13 (a)****Fig.13 (b)****Fig.13 (c)**

Fig.14**Fig.15**

PULP MOLDED ARTICLE

This application is a Division of application Ser. No. 09/622,043 filed on Oct. 10, 2000, pending which was originally filed as International Application Number PCT/JP99/00775 on Feb. 22, 1999.

TECHNICAL FIELD

The present invention relates to a method for producing pulp molded articles that can be used as, for example, packaging members such as containers and cushioning materials.

BACKGROUND ART

Plastics are used as general materials of packaging containers, for example, those with a lid and bottles, for their excellent molding properties and productivity. However, because plastic containers involve various problems associated with waste disposal, pulp molded containers formed by pulp molding have been attracting attention as substitutes for plastic containers. Pulp molded containers are not only easy to dispose of but economically excellent because they can be manufactured by using recycled paper.

The following process is known as one of the methods for producing the pulp molded containers. A pulp slurry is poured into a split mold, for example, a pair of splits, which has a plurality of holes interconnecting the outside of the mold to the cavity and which is lined with a metal net, and the split mold is evacuated from the outside to deposit pulp fiber on the metal net thereby to form a pulp deposited body. After the pulp deposited body is shaped in conformity to the configuration of the split mold cavity, a pulp molded container made of the thus shaped pulp deposited body is removed from the mold and dried.

In the above process, however, the pulp deposited body should be taken out while having a considerably high water content, or the pulp deposited body needs a long time for dehydration and drying. Therefore, the pulp molded container is liable to deformation, and productivity is low due to poor drying efficiency. As a result, the pulp molded container is uncompetitive in price.

Japanese Patent Application Laid-Open No. 133972/9 discloses a process for producing a pulp molded container which comprises ejecting a pulp slurry from a special nozzle into a net mold, blowing high-pressure air to remove a considerable part of the water content, followed by removal from the mold and drying with hot air, infrared rays, etc.

However, having no step of bringing the pulp deposited body into intimate contact with the mold surface (pressing onto the mold surface), the above process fails to make a complicated shape and involves great variations of precision in product shape and dimension. Moreover, the drying efficiency is poor, and the product wall thickness (basis weight or density) is uncontrollable.

Accordingly, an object of the present invention is to provide a method for producing a pulp molded article by which a pulp molded article of complicated shape can be obtained by integral molding with no seams at the mouth portion, the body, and the bottom portion.

DISCLOSURE OF THE INVENTION

The present invention has achieved the above object by providing a method for producing a pulp molded article comprising the steps of supplying a pulp slurry into the cavity of a mold composed of a set of splits, the set of splits

being assembled together to form the cavity with a prescribed configuration, to form a pulp deposited body, feeding a fluid into the cavity to press the pulp deposited body onto the inner wall of the cavity thereby to dewater the deposited body,

said pulp slurry containing pulp fibers having an average fiber length of 0.8 to 2.0 mm, a Canadian Standard Freeness of 100 to 600 cc, and such a frequency distribution of fiber length as comprises 20 to 90% on the total fiber, of fibers whose length ranges longer than 1.4 mm and not longer than 3.0 mm.

BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS

FIG. 1(a), FIG. 1(b), FIG. 1(c), FIG. 1(d) and FIG. 1(e) schematically show a first embodiment of the present invention, wherein FIG. 1(a) is the step of papermaking, FIG. 1(b) is the step of inserting a pressing member, FIG. 1(c) is the step of pressing, dewatering, and drying, FIG. 1(d) is the step of opening the mold, and FIG. 1(e) is the step of removing a pulp molded article.

FIG. 2 is a perspective exploded view of a split which is preferably used in the present invention.

FIG. 3 is a cross sectional view of another split mold which is preferably used in the present invention.

FIG. 4 is a vertical cross section showing an example of pulp molded articles produced according to the present invention.

FIG. 5 is a cross sectional view of still another split preferably used in the present invention.

FIG. 6 is a frequency distribution curve of fiber length of pulp fibers preferably used in the present invention.

FIG. 7(a), FIG. 7(b), FIG. 7(c), FIG. 7(d) and FIG. 7(e) schematically show a third embodiment of the present invention, wherein FIG. 7(a) is the step of inserting an air feed pipe into a mold and immersing the mold, FIG. 7(b) is the step of sucking up a pulp slurry to form a paper layer, FIG. 7(c) is the step of feeding air into the cavity and dewatering the pulp deposited body, FIG. 7(d) is the step of pulling up the mold and drawing out the air feed pipe, and FIG. 7(e) is the step of opening the mold to take out the pulp deposited body.

FIG. 8 schematically illustrates the step of inserting an air feed pipe into a mold and immersing the mold in a fourth embodiment of the present invention (corresponding to FIG. 7(a)).

FIG. 9(a), FIG. 9(b) and FIG. 9(c) schematically show a sixth embodiment of the present invention, wherein FIG. 9(a) is the step of inserting an edge finishing member, FIG. 9(b) is the step of making the opening portion of a pulp deposited body thicker, and FIG. 9(c) is the step of pressing the pulp deposited body by a pressing member.

FIG. 10 schematically depicts a molding apparatus used in a seventh embodiment of the present invention.

FIG. 11(a), FIG. 11(b), FIG. 11(c) and FIG. 11(d) schematically show an eighth embodiment of the present invention, wherein FIG. 11(a) is the step of inserting an insert member, FIG. 11(b) is the step of preliminarily expanding a covering member, FIG. 11(c) is the step of pressure dewatering a pulp deposited body, and FIG. 11(d) is the step of opening the mold and taking out the pulp deposited body.

FIG. 12 schematically shows the step of inserting an insert member in a ninth embodiment of the present invention (corresponding to FIG. 11(a)).

FIG. 13(a), FIG. 13(b) and FIG. 13(c) illustrate a tenth embodiment of the present invention, wherein FIG. 13(a) is

the step of injecting a first pulp slurry under pressure, FIG. 13(b) is the step of injecting a second pulp slurry under pressure, and FIG. 3(c) is the step of pressure dewatering.

FIG. 14 is a schematic view showing the multilayered structure of a pulp molded article obtained in the 10th embodiment.

FIG. 15 is a schematic view showing the multilayered structure of another pulp molded article obtained in the 10th embodiment (corresponding to FIG. 14).

BEST MODE FOR CARRYING OUT THE INVENTION

Specific embodiments in the practice of the present invention are described below in detail by referring to drawings. To begin with, a first embodiment is described with reference to FIG. 1.

The method for producing a pulp molded article according to this embodiment is characterized by comprising injecting a pulp slurry into the cavity 1 of a mold 10 composed of a set of splits 3 and 4, the set of splits being butted together to form a cavity of prescribed shape, evacuating the split mold 3 and 4 to deposit pulp fibers on the inner wall of the split mold 3 and 4 to form a pulp deposited body 5, inserting an elastic and stretchable pressing member 6 inside the split mold 3 and 4, feeding a fluid into the pressing member 6 to inflate the pressing member 6, pressing the pulp deposited body 5 with the inflated pressing member 6 onto the inner wall of the split mold 3 and 4 thereby to press, dewater, and dry the pulp deposited body 5, withdrawing the fluid from the pressing member 6, and removing a pulp molded article 7 from the splits 3 and 4. The splits 3 and 4 each have a plurality of interconnecting holes 2 which connect the outer side thereof and the cavity 1.

The method of producing the pulp molded article according to this embodiment will further be described in the concrete with reference to FIG. 1. As shown in FIG. 1(a), a pulp slurry is injected into a split mold for papermaking made of a pair of splits 3 and 4 having a plurality of interconnecting holes 2 interconnecting the outer side of the splits 3 and 4 to the cavity 1. The pulp slurry is a dispersion of pulp fiber in water. The pulp fiber is preferably wood pulp, such as soft wood pulp and hard wood pulp, or non-wood pulp, such as bamboo and straw. The pulp fibers preferably have a length of 0.1 to 10.0 mm and a thickness of 0.01 to 0.05 mm. A particularly preferred composition of the pulp slurry will be described later.

In this particular embodiment, a cylindrical bottle whose opening (mouth) has a smaller diameter than its body is produced by using splits 3 and 4 providing a cavity configuration in conformity to the contour of the bottle.

As shown in FIG. 1(a), the split mold 3 and 4 is evacuated from the outside of the splits 3 and 4 to build up pulp fiber on the inner wall of the split mold. A pulp deposited body 5 built up of the pulp fiber is thus formed on the inner wall of the split mold.

Then, the elastic and stretchable pressing member 6 is inserted into the cavity 1 while evacuating the cavity 1 as shown in FIG. 1(b). The pressing member 6 is used as inflated in the cavity like a balloon thereby to press the pulp deposited body 5 onto the inner wall of the split mold while dewatering thereby to transfer the inner configuration of the split mold to the pulp deposited body. It is therefore preferably made of urethane, fluorine or silicone rubber, elastomers, etc., which are excellent in tensile strength, impact resilience and stretchability. The pressing member 6 may be a hollow bag having no elasticity, in which case, too,

the pressing member is inserted into the split mold 3 and 4 to press the pulp deposited body 5 onto the inner wall of the split mold whereby the inner configuration of the split mold can be transferred to the pulp deposited body 5. The pressing member 6 of bag form is made of, for example, a synthetic resin film such as a polyethylene film or a polypropylene film, a synthetic resin film having aluminum or silica deposited, a synthetic resin film laminated with aluminum foil, paper, fabrics, and the like. The bag should be equal to or greater in size than the inner contour of the pulp deposited body 5. It is possible that the pressing member is not taken out after pressing the pulp deposited body 5 and left there as a liner of the pulp deposited body.

As shown FIG. 1(c), a fluid is fed into the pressing member 6 to inflate the pressing member 6. The inflated pressing member 6 presses the pulp deposited body 5 to the inner wall of the split mold to dewater under pressure. While the pulp deposited body 5 is pressed onto the inner wall of the split mold by the inflated pressing member 6, the configuration of the inner wall of the split mold is transferred thereto. Since the pulp deposited body 5 in the cavity 1 is pressed to the inner wall of the split mold in this manner, the inner side configuration of the split mold can be transferred to the pulp deposited body 5 with good precision however complicated the configuration may be. The above-described fluid includes compressed air, oil and other liquids. The pressure for fluid feed is preferably 9.8×10^5 Pa to 49.0×10^5 Pa. Under a pressure lower than 9.8×10^5 Pa, the pressing member 6 may fail to press the pulp deposited body 5 to the inner wall of the split mold. Under a pressure exceeding 49.0×10^5 Pa, the pulp deposited body 5 may be collapsed by the pressing member 6.

Being pressed in the split mold 3 and 4 which is in a heated state, the pulp deposited body 5 is pressed, dehydrated, and dried. Thereafter the fluid is withdrawn from the pressing member 6, whereupon the pressing member 6 shrinks by its own elastic force as shown in FIG. 1(d). The shrunken pressing member 6 is taken out of the split mold 3 and 4, and the split mold 3 and 4 is opened to remove the pulp molded article 7. It is preferred for the fluid be pressurized so as to shorten the time for feeding and discharging the fluid in and out of the pressing member 6. It is also preferred for the fluid be heated so as to shorten the drying time.

The pulp molded article 7 thus produced is a cylindrical bottle whose opening portion 7a (neck) has a smaller diameter than the body 7b. The neck 7a, the body 7b, and the bottom 7c are integrally unified with no seams. Having no joint seams on the outer surface, the pulp molded article 7 obtained by the method of the present invention has an excellent outer appearance.

According to the above-described embodiment, since the pulp molded article 7 is taken out after completion of drying and dehydration, the drying efficiency is high, the productivity is excellent, and deformation of the container can be prevented. According to this embodiment, because the pressing onto the inner wall of the split mold is under control, it is possible to impart a complicated shape, there is no scatter of shape and dimensional precision, and the drying efficiency is good. Further, it is possible to control the thickness and the basis weight, which enables strength design in designing the pulp molded article 7. Furthermore, this embodiment provides a container having beautiful appearance on both the outer and inner sides thereof with satisfactory surface properties.

The above-described embodiment provides molded articles having complicated shapes, including, for example,

not only containers having a large height (60 mm or more) and those having no draft but those formed of three-dimensional curved surfaces, those with or without a bottom, and the like. Molded articles that can be produced include a bottomless hollow container that is straight (no draft angle) and as high as 60 mm or more, a bottomless hollow container having a dent in its middle with a three-dimensional curve, and a bottomless hollow container having a plurality of projections on the outer side around the lower edge thereof with a three-dimensional curve. Also included are a closed-end hollow container which is straight with no draft angle and whose opening is substantially equal to the bottom in diameter and a closed-end hollow container like a mortar whose opening has a larger diameter than the bottom. Additionally included are a closed-end or bottomless container whose opening has a smaller diameter than the body, a closed-end cylindrical hollow container having a relief pattern on its surface, a closed-end hollow container having a dent in the middle, a closed-end hollow container whose outer diameter gradually decreases from the opening to the bottom, and a closed-end hollow container whose outer diameter gradually increased from the opening toward the bottom.

While in the above-described embodiment pressure dewatering and heat drying of the pulp deposited body 5 are carried out in the same mold, these operations may be conducted in separate molds. In detail, after a pulp deposited body 5 is formed as shown in FIG. 1(a), a pressing member 6 is inserted into the cavity 1 as shown in FIG. 1(b). A pressurizing fluid is fed into the pressing member 6 whereby the pulp deposited body 5 is pressed onto the inner wall of the cavity 1 and dewatered under pressure. The mold 10 used here is not heated. On dewatering the pulp deposited body 5 to a predetermined water content, the split mold 3 and 4 is opened to take out a wet pulp preform. The pulp preform is set in a separately prepared heating mold (not shown) which is composed of a set of splits and heated to a predetermined temperature, where the preform is dried under heat. The heat drying can be accelerated by inserting a pressing member similar to the pressing member 6 used in the above-mentioned pressure dewatering into the cavity of the heating mold and feeding a pressurizing fluid into the pressing member to inflate the pressing member thereby pressing the wet preform onto the inner wall of the heating mold cavity.

In carrying out pressure dewatering and heat drying in separate molds, the cavity configuration of the mold for pressure dewatering is not particularly limited as long as the cavity configuration of the heated mold for heat drying is in conformity to the outer contour of a molded article to be made.

In the embodiment depicted in FIGS. 1(a) through (c) the pressing member 6 which is elastic and stretchable may be replaced with a previously molded closed-end parison (preformed parison) comprising a thermoplastic resin in a heated state to a predetermined temperature.

In some detail, the above-mentioned parison is a previously molded cold parison of a thermoplastic resin, which has a screw thread along its neck. The thermoplastic resins preferably include polyethylene, polypropylene, and polyethylene terephthalate. A preferred parison heating temperature is 120 to 140° C. in case of using polypropylene or 100 to 130° C. in case of using polyethylene terephthalate.

A parison heated to a predetermined temperature is inserted into the cavity in place of the pressing member 6 shown in FIG. 1(b). Subsequently, a pressurizing fluid is fed

into the parison to inflate it, and the pulp deposited body is pressed onto the inner sides of the split mold by the inflated parison whereby the pulp deposited body is pressure dewatered and heat dried. Thus, the thermoplastic resin film is formed in intimate contact with the inner surface of the pulp deposited body 5 simultaneously with the shaping, dewatering, and drying of the pulp deposited body 5. According to this method, since lining with the thermoplastic resin film can be performed simultaneously with the dewatering and drying of the pulp deposited body, the production process can be simplified to bring about improvement in productivity and reduction in cost. Having the thermoplastic resin film as a liner, the pulp molded article 7 produced by this method is excellent in waterproofness, moisture proofness, and gas barrier properties and enjoys a broadened range of application as a container.

FIG. 2 illustrates a split that can be used preferably in the above-described embodiment. This split is constructed of a papermaking part 100 having a cavity 101 to form a pulp deposited body and a manifold part 110 having a vacuum port 111 connecting with the outside. The manifold part 110 is fitted to the back of the cavity 101 to form a hollow chamber, surrounded by the back of the papermaking part 100 and the side walls 112 and the side wall 113 around the opening of the manifold part 110. The block 102 of the papermaking part 100, in which the cavity 101 is engraved, has a plurality of interconnecting holes 103 connecting the cavity 101 to the hollow chamber.

The papermaking part 100 and the manifold part 110 can be exchangeably clamped together by fastening a ring 114 of the manifold part 110 to a hook 104 of the papermaking part 100. The papermaking part 100 varies according to the shape of the pulp molded article, only the papermaking part is changed in changing the kind of the product. A sealant is provided on the upper edge of the side walls 112 of the manifold part 110 to prevent reduction of efficiency in evacuating the hollow chamber while the papermaking part 100 and the manifold part 110 are clamped together.

The splits shown in FIG. 3 are also preferred as a modification of the split shown in FIG. 2. The manifold part 110 of the split shown in FIG. 3 has partitioning walls 115 and 115. These partitioning walls divide the hollow chamber into three hollow sub-chambers (a first chamber 116, a second chamber 117, and a third chamber 118), each of which is connected to the cavity through a plurality of interconnecting holes 103. A sealant 119 is provided on the upper edge of each partitioning wall 115 (i.e., the edge in contact with the block 102 of the papermaking part 100). The chambers 116, 117 and 118 have the respective vacuum ports (a first vacuum port 116', a second vacuum port 117', and a third vacuum port 118', respectively) connected to an external suction means. These vacuum ports can be controlled independently. A net layer 105 hereinafter described is disposed on the cavity 101 of the papermaking part 100.

In molding a pulp molded article by use of the splits shown in FIG. 3, the suction pressure of each of the chambers 116, 117, and 118 can be controlled so as to vary the suction force applied from each hollow chamber to the respective parts of the surface of the cavity 101 through the respective interconnecting holes. Through such suction control, a desired part of the pulp molded article that particularly requires strength can be made thicker. For example, where the suction pressure of only the first hollow chamber is increased, the amount-of pulp fiber deposited on the corresponding part of the cavity 101 which connects with the first hollow chamber can be made larger than that

on the other parts of the cavity connecting with the other hollow chambers. It is possible, as a result, to produce a pulp molded article having that part of the wall made thicker.

It is possible to control the wall thickness of the pulp molded article more precisely by providing time lags among the hollow chambers in starting or stopping suction. For example, a pressure gauge (vacuum gauge) is set at each vacuum port, and the hollow chambers 116, 117, and 118 are independently operated under the respective pressures. When the degree of vacuum decreases to a certain set level as pulp fiber is accumulated on the cavity 101, the suction of each of the hollow chambers 116, 117, and 118 is ceased. As a result, waste of suction energy can be avoided.

Suction control failures due to breakage of the net layer 105, clogging of the interconnecting holes 103, a trouble of a suction means, etc. can be monitored by checking the pressure gauge provided for each hollow chamber.

By the use of the split molds shown in FIGS. 2 and 3 pulp molded articles of various shapes can be obtained by exchanging the papermaking part 100. For example, a carton shown in FIG. 4 can be produced in place of the cylindrical bottle shown in FIG. 1(d).

The pulp molded article 7 shown in FIG. 4 has an opening portion (neck) 7a in the upper portion, a body 7b, and a bottom 7c. The body 7b and the bottom 7c connect via a curved portion 7d to give the molded article 7 increased impact strength. The horizontal cross section of the molded article 7 is almost equal in the height direction and is a rectangle with its four corners rounded to give the molded article 7 increased impact strength and with its four sides gently curved outward. The body 7b has a continuous recess 7e around its circumference to make the molded body 1 easier to hold.

When the molded article 7 is seen from its side, the outer surfaces (exclusive of the recess 7e) of the front and rear walls forming the body 7b are straight in the direction of height. Similarly when the molded article 7 is seen from the front, the outer surfaces (exclusive of the recess 7e) of the left and right side walls forming the body 7b are straight in the direction of height.

In the molded article 7, the angle θ between the plane of contact B of the bottom 7c and the outer side wall of the body 7b is more than 85° , preferably 89° or more (about 90° in FIG. 4) with respect to any wall of the front and rear side walls and the left and right side walls, and the height h (see FIG. 4) of the body 7b is 50 mm or more, preferably 100 mm or more. The angle θ can exceed 90° . Conventional methods of producing pulp molded articles have encountered various restrictions in designing containers, and it has been practically impossible to produce a molded article with such a large rising angle of the side walls and a considerable depth. The method according to the present invention is freed of such inconvenience.

It is preferred for the molded article 7 to have a larger thickness at the corners in its vertical cross section and/or horizontal cross section than the other portion to improve the compressive strength (buckling strength) of the molded article 7 as a whole over the one having equal thickness in these portions. For example, in the vertical cross section of the molded article 7 shown in FIG. 4, the thickness T2 of the corners, i.e., curved bends 7d, is preferably greater than the thickness T1 of the body 7b (i.e., T2>T1). In this case, where T2/T1 is 1.5 to 2, the improvement on compressive strength of the whole molded article 7 can be secured. It is preferred that the thickness T1 be 0.1 mm or greater for the molded article 7 to exhibit the minimum compressive strength

required. It is required for the molded article 7 to have a prescribed compressive strength, considering that the molded articles 7 are to be transported or stacked up in a warehouse or a shop. It is similarly preferred that the molded article 7 has a larger thickness at the corners (T2) in its horizontal cross section (not shown) than the thickness T1 in the other portions.

In cases where the corners of the molded article 7 in the vertical cross section and/or the horizontal cross section satisfy the relationship that their density (ρ_2) is smaller than the density (ρ_1) of the other portions (i.e., $\rho_1 > \rho_2$) as well as the above-described relationship between T1 and T2, there is produced an effect that two conflicting phenomena—an improvement in compressive strength of the molded article 7 and a reduction in amount of the material used—can result. This effect is more notable when $0.1 \times \rho_1 < \rho_2 < \rho_1$. The molded article 7 which satisfies these relationships has a compressive strength of 190 N or greater. The compressive strength as referred to here is the maximum strength in compressing the molded article 7 along the direction of height at a speed of 20 mm/min. The above-described relationship between T1 and T2 and between ρ_1 and ρ_2 can be established by, for instance, properly selecting the pressure or the amount of flow of the pressurizing fluid used in pressing with the pressing member 6, the material or shape of the pressing member 6, the shape of the molded article, and the like in carrying out the aforementioned method.

As stated above, it is easy with the split mold shown in FIG. 3 to make a desired part of a pulp molded article thicker. As an alternative, it is also easy with the split mold shown in FIG. 5 to make a desired part of a pulp molded article thicker.

The split mold shown in FIG. 5 has a papermaking part 100, a manifold part 110, and a mold 120 for creating slurry stagnation (hereinafter "a stagnation-causing mold"). The stagnation-causing mold 120 is inserted into the cavity, which is formed by closing the split molds, to form a space with the inner wall of the cavity in which space the slurry stagnates. The papermaking part 100 and the manifold part 110 have the same structures as shown in FIG. 3.

On butting the splits shown in FIG. 5 to each other, there is formed inside a cavity in conformity to the contour of an article to be molded. The part of the cavity that corresponds to the opening portion of the molded article (this part is referred to as "the part of the cavity corresponding to the opening portion" in this embodiment) has an opening open to the outside. Into this part is inserted a wall 122 for making the slurry stagnant (hereinafter "a slurry stagnation wall", described later) of the stagnation-causing mold 120. While not depicted, the inner side of the part of the cavity corresponding to the opening portion has grooves corresponding to the screw thread.

As shown in FIG. 5, the stagnation-causing mold 120 is composed of a rectangular top plate 121 and a cylindrical slurry stagnation wall 122 hanging from approximately the center portion of the lower side of the top plate 121. The slurry stagnation wall 122 forms a hollow cylinder which vertically pierces the stagnation-causing mold 120 and serves as a gate 123 through which a pulp slurry is poured in. The slurry stagnation wall 122 of the stagnation-causing mold 120 is inserted into the part of the cavity corresponding to the opening portion, and the lower side of the top plate 121 and the end of the manifold part 110 are brought into contact to complete the split mold 10.

The outer diameter of the slurry stagnation wall 122 is smaller than the cavity diameter of the part of the cavity

corresponding to the opening portion. Therefore, an annular space 123 in which the slurry stagnates is formed between the inner wall of that part of the cavity corresponding to the opening portion and the outer side of the slurry stagnation wall 122 inserted in that part of the cavity corresponding to the opening portion.

Where the molding is carried out by use of the above-described split mold, the pulp slurry goes around to fill the annular space 123 formed between the outer side of the slurry stagnation wall 122 and the inner side of the part of the cavity corresponding to the opening portion and tends to stay there, making the pulp fiber be accumulated there more than on the other parts of the cavity 1. It follows that a pulp deposited body formed on the inner wall of the cavity 1 has a thicker wall in its portion corresponding to the vicinity of the upper edge of the opening portion of a molded article than in the other portions. The thickness of the thicker portion is proportional to the breadth of the annular space 124.

The pulp molded article thus obtained has a thick-walled portion around its neck from its upper edge to a prescribed depth which is thicker than the body and the bottom. The thick-walled portion is continuous along the circumference of the neck. A screw to thread mating a cap is provided on the outer side of the neck. The contour of the vertical cross section of the screw thread can be triangular or rectangular in accordance with the strength of the neck or the productivity of the molded article (e.g., easiness with which the screw thread is dried or easiness with which the shape is transferred). Where the molded article is to be capped and uncapped frequently, the screw thread preferably has a trapezoidal contour. In order to increase the durability against capping and uncapping, the neck including the screw thread may be coated or impregnated with a resin to increase the strength.

The pulp slurry which can be used in the above-described embodiment preferably contains pulp fibers having an average fiber length of 0.8 to 2.0 mm, a Canadian Standard Freeness of 100 to 600 cc, and such a frequency distribution of fiber length as comprises 20 to 90%, based on the total fiber, of fibers whose length ranges from 0.4 mm to 1.4 mm and 5 to 50%, based on the total fiber, of fibers whose length is longer than 1.4 mm and not longer than 3.0 mm. Pulp molded articles obtained from such a pulp slurry are uniform in thickness, free from cracks in papermaking, and excellent in surface smoothness.

It is preferred for the pulp fibers to have an average length of 0.8 to 2.0 mm, particularly 0.9 to 1.8 mm, especially 1.0 to 1.5 mm. If the average fiber length is less than 0.8 mm, cracks tend to develop on the surface of the molded article during papermaking or drying, or the molded article tends to have poor mechanical properties such as impact strength. If the average fiber length exceeds 2.0 mm, the pulp deposited body formed by papermaking tends to have unevenness of thickness only to provide a molded article with poor surface smoothness. The term "average fiber length" as used herein is a value obtained by measuring the frequency distribution of pulp fiber length and calculating a length-weighted fiber length from the distribution.

It is preferred for the pulp fibers to have a freeness of 100 to 600 cc, particularly 200 to 500 cc, especially 300 to 400 cc. A freeness less than 100 cc is so low that speed-up of the molding cycle tends to be difficult, and dewatering of the molded article tends to be insufficient. A freeness exceeding 600 cc is so high that the pulp deposited body formed by papermaking tends to suffer from unevenness of thickness.

It is preferred for the pulp fibers to have such a fiber length frequency distribution as comprises 20 to 90%, based on the total fiber, of fibers whose length is within a range of from 0.4 mm to 1.4 mm (hereinafter referred to as range A) and 5 to 50%, based on the total fiber, of fibers whose length is longer than 1.4 mm and not longer than 3.0 mm (hereinafter referred to as range B). FIG. 6 furnishes an example of fiber length frequency distribution curves of pulp fibers preferably used in the method of the present invention. The ratio of the area in range A (indicated with slant lines) to the total area in the frequency distribution curve is equivalent to the proportion (%) of the pulp fibers whose length falls within range A. Similarly, the ratio of the area in range B (indicated with slant lines) to the total area in the frequency distribution curve is equivalent to the proportion (%) of the pulp fibers whose length falls within range B. By using pulp fibers having such a frequency distribution as well as an average fiber length and a freeness falling within the above respective ranges, pulp molded articles uniform in thickness, free from crack development during papermaking, and excellent in surface smoothness can be obtained. It is still preferred that the proportion of the pulp fibers having a fiber length within range A be 30 to 80%, particularly 35 to 65% and that the proportion of the pulp fibers having a fiber length within range B be 7.5 to 40%, particularly 10 to 35%.

To further enhance the above-described effects, it is particularly preferred for the pulp fibers to have such a frequency distribution as has peaks P_A and P_B in ranges A and B, respectively, as represented by FIG. 6.

Pulp fibers having the aforesaid average fiber length, freeness and fiber length frequency distribution can be obtained by selecting, for example, the kind of the fiber (from, e.g., NBKP, LBKP, used paper pulp, etc.), beating conditions, conditions of blending a plurality of pulp kinds, and the like. It is particularly preferred to prepare the above-described pulp fiber by blending relatively long pulp fibers having an average fiber length of 1.5 to 3.0 mm and relatively short pulp fibers having an average fiber length of 0.3 to 1.0 mm at a ratio of 90/10 to 40/60 (by weight) for obtaining a molded article having high surface smoothness.

The above-described pulp slurry can consist of the above-described pulp fiber and water. The pulp slurry can further contain other components, such as inorganic substances, e.g., talc and kaolin; inorganic fiber, e.g., glass fiber and carbon fiber, synthetic resin powder or fiber, e.g., polyolefin; nonwood or plant fibers; polysaccharides; and the like. The amount of these components is preferably 1 to 70% by weight, particularly 5 to 50% by weight, based on the total amount of the pulp fibers and these components.

The second to tenth embodiments of the present invention are then described with reference to FIGS. 7 through 15. Only the particulars different from the first embodiment will be explained. The description about the first embodiment appropriately applies to the particulars that are not explained here. The members in FIGS. 7 to 15 which are the same as those in FIGS. 1 to 6 are given the same numerical references as used in FIGS. 1 to 6.

In the second embodiment, a net layer composed of a coarse mesh and a fine mesh is put on the surface of each of the splits 3 and 4 of the split mold for papermaking used in the first embodiment, and a pulp slurry is then injected to form a pulp deposited body. In detail, the net layer is composed of a first mesh and a second mesh that is finer than the first mesh. The first mesh is tightly put on the splits 3 and 4, and the second mesh is put on the first mesh. Or, a net layer composed of a first mesh and a second mesh that is

finer than the first mesh is used, and the first mesh is tightly put on the splits 3 and 4, and the second mesh is formed on the first mesh. With the fine second mesh put on the coarse first mesh, or with the fine second mesh formed on the coarse first mesh, the number of the interconnecting holes 2 to be bored in the splits 3 and 4 can be decreased, and a pulp deposited body 5 hereinafter described can be accumulated with a uniform thickness.

The first mesh and the second mesh make a coarse net layer and a fine net layer, respectively, and, when put on the splits 3 and 4, are in tight contact with the surface contour of the splits 3 and 4. Each of the first mesh and the second mesh is made of, for example, a natural material, a synthetic resin or a metal or a combination of two or more thereof. The net layers can be given a surface modifying coat to improve the slip properties, heat resistance, and durability. The natural materials include plant fibers and animal fibers. The synthetic resins include thermoplastic resins, thermosetting resins, recycled resins, and semi-synthetic resins.

The average maximum opening width of the first mesh is preferably 1 to 50 mm, particularly 5 to 10 mm. The term "opening width" of the first mesh means the distance between lines of the mesh. If the average maximum opening width is less than 1 mm, the evacuation efficiency is so poor that the pulp fibers are hardly deposited on the surface of the net layer, and a pulp deposited body is hardly formed. If it exceeds 50 mm, the second mesh may pass through between lines of the first mesh to come into contact with the surface of the paper mold. In this case, the evacuation efficiency is reduced in places, resulting in uneven thickness of the pulp deposited body.

The average opening area ratio of the first mesh is preferably 30 to 95%, particularly 75 to 90%. If the average opening area ratio is less than 30%, the evacuation efficiency is so poor that formation of a pulp deposited body is difficult. If it exceeds 95%, the second mesh may come into contact with the surface of the paper mold, which deteriorates the evacuation efficiency in places. As a result, the pulp deposited body will have an uneven thickness.

On the other hand, the average maximum opening width of the second mesh is preferably 0.05 to 1.0 mm, particularly 0.2 to 0.5 mm. The term "opening width" of the second mesh means the inner size between lines of the mesh. If the average maximum opening width is less than 0.05 mm, the evacuation efficiency is so poor that a pulp deposited body is hardly formed. If it exceeds 1.0 mm, the pulp fibers tend to pass therethrough, and it is difficult to form a pulp deposited body.

The average opening area ratio of the second mesh is preferably 30 to 90%, particularly 50 to 80%. If the average opening area ratio is less than 30%, the evacuation efficiency is so poor that a pulp deposited body is hardly formed. If it is more than 90%, the pulp fibers easily pass therethrough, leading to result in difficulty in forming a pulp deposited body.

In this particular embodiment, a net having an average maximum opening width of 3 to 6 mm, an average opening area ratio of 80 to 92%, and a line width of 0.3 mm in the state fitted on the splits 3 and 4 was used as the first mesh. Such a first mesh has an average maximum opening width of 0.08 to 0.25 mm, an average opening area ratio of 46%, and a line width of 0.12 mm in the state before being put on the splits 3 and 4. As the second mesh, a stocking having an average maximum opening width of 0.22 to 0.35 mm, an average opening area ratio of 58 to 69%, and a line width of 0.06 to 0.07 mm in the state fitted on the splits 3 and 4 was

used. Such a second mesh has an average maximum opening width of 0.38 to 0.42 mm, an average opening area ratio of 75%, and a line width of 0.05 to 0.06 mm in the state before being put on the splits 3 and 4. The second mesh does not need to have more rigidity than enough not to come into contact with the surface of the split mold through the openings of the first mesh when the inside of the split mold is evacuated.

In the third embodiment, the mold 10 shown in FIGS. 7(a) through (c) is used. The mold 10 is of the type that a set of splits 3 and 4 are butted together to make a cavity 1 in conformity to the outer contour of an article to be molded which has a neck and also to make a slurry inlet gate 9 which connects the part of the cavity corresponding to the neck (the cavity part 8) to the outside.

In the mold 10, the slurry inlet gate 9, which is formed by closing the two splits 3 and 4, has a smaller horizontal cross section area than the cavity part 8 corresponding to the neck. This design has the following advantage. When a pulp slurry is made to flow into the cavity 1 by suction to form a layer of pulp fiber, the pulp fiber layer, especially the pulp fiber layer which will become the neck of a molded article, is effectively prevented from being disturbed by the flow of the slurry into the cavity 1 by suction, and the resulting molded article will have a uniform thickness at the neck.

While depending on the size or shape of the article to be molded, the degree of pulp slurry suction, and the like, the ratio of the cross section area of the slurry inlet gate 9 and that of the cavity part 8 corresponding to the neck is preferably 0.05 to 0.99, particularly 0.30 to 0.70, with which the wall thickness can be made uniform all over the molded article, and the papermaking efficiency is improved.

The method of producing a pulp molded article having a neck and a closed end (bottom) by use of the above-described mold 10 will be described by referring to FIG. 7. As shown in FIG. 7(a), a pair of splits 3 and 4 are butted to each other to make the mold 10 having a cavity 1 with a net layer 11 fitted on the inner side thereof. An air feed pipe 13 having a collar 12 is inserted into the cavity 1 through the slurry inlet gate 9, and the mold 10 having the air feed pipe 13 inserted therein is immersed in a pulp slurry 14 with its slurry inlet gate 9 down. The air feed pipe 13 has a disc-shaped collar 12 near its end 15 to which an air feed hose 16 is connected. The collar 12 is larger than the section area of slurry inlet gate 9 of the mold 10. The air feed hose 16 is connected to an air feed source (not shown). The air feed pipe 13 is inserted into the cavity 1, led by its free end 17. The length of the air feed pipe 13 from the free end 17 to the collar 12 is such that the free end 17 does not reach the part of the cavity 1 corresponding to the bottom (part 8) when the collar 12 is brought into contact with the slurry inlet gate 9.

As shown in FIG. 7(b), the pulp slurry 14 is sucked in through a gap 18 between the slurry inlet gate 9 and the collar 12 of the air feed pipe 13 by a suction means (not shown) connected to a vacuum port 111, whereby pulp fibers are built up on the net layer 11 along the inner wall of the cavity 1 to form a pulp deposited body 5 on the net layer 11. The degree of suction, while dependent on the size and shape of the article to be molded, is usually -0.13 to -101.3 kPa for preference, particularly -13.3 to -90.0 kPa.

On forming a pulp deposited body 5 to a prescribed thickness, the slurry inlet gate 9 is blocked by the collar 12 of the air feed pipe 13 as shown in FIG. 7(c) to stop the flow of the pulp slurry 14. With the slurry inlet gate 9 blocked by the collar 12, air is forced to be fed to the upper space of the

cavity 1 (i.e., the vicinity of the cavity part 8' corresponding to the bottom) through the air feed pipe 13 by means of an air feed source (not shown) while evacuating the cavity 1, whereby the pulp slurry 14 existing in the cavity 1 is discharged outside, and the pulp deposited body 5 is dewatered. Since the evacuation is carried out while feeding air to the upper space of the cavity 1 filled with the pulp slurry 14, the deposited pulp fibers are effectively prevented from being disturbed by the evacuation to provide a molded article with uniform thickness. Since the cross section area of the slurry inlet gate 9 is smaller than that of the cavity part 8 corresponding to the neck, the pulp fibers accumulated on the cavity part 8 corresponding to the neck are effectively prevented from being disturbed by the flow of the pulp slurry 14 thereby to further secure the uniformity in thickness of the neck of the resulting molded article. From the standpoint of shape retention of the pulp deposited body 5 and productivity, it is preferred to conduct the above-described dewatering to such a degree as to reduce the water content of the pulp deposited body 5 to 10 to 95% by weight, particularly 40 to 80% by weight.

After dewatering the pulp deposited body 5 to a predetermined water content, the mold 10 is drawn from the pulp slurry 14 as shown in FIG. 7(d), and the air feed pipe 13 in the mold 10 is pulled down. Subsequently the mold 10 is opened, and the pulp deposited body 5 is taken out as shown in FIG. 7(e). Since the pulp deposited body 5 has been dewatered to a degree enough to have sufficient shape retention by this time, there is no fear of shape deformation when it is taken out. The pulp deposited body 5 is then set in a heating mold heated to a prescribed temperature and heat dried to give a pulp molded article. The heat drying operation can be carried out in the same manner as in the first embodiment.

In the fourth embodiment, an air feed pipe 13 is used similarly to the third embodiment as shown in FIG. 8. The air feed pipe 13 has a disc-shaped collar 12 near the end 15 similarly to the third embodiment but with no air feed hose connected to that end 15. Instead, the end 15 is blocked by a blocking means 19 to prevent liquid from entering the air feed pipe 13. The air feed pipe 13 is inserted into the cavity 1, led by the other end 17. The mold 10 having the air feed pipe 13 inside is immersed in the pulp slurry 14 with the slurry inlet gate 9 down.

The pulp slurry 14 is sucked in through a gap between the slurry inlet gate 9 and the collar 12 of the air feed pipe 13 while evacuating the cavity 1, whereby pulp fibers are built up on the net layer 11 along the inner wall of the cavity 1 to form a pulp deposited body 5 on the net layer 11.

On forming a pulp deposited body 5 to a prescribed thickness, the slurry inlet gate 9 is blocked by the collar 12 of the air feed pipe 13 to stop the flow of the pulp slurry 14. The evacuation is once stopped simultaneously. The mold 10 with its gate 9 blocked by the collar 12 is drawn from the pulp slurry 14. Subsequently, the blocking means 19 that has been blocking the end 15 of the air feed pipe 13 is removed to let air enter spontaneously through the air feed pipe 13 to the space near the cavity part 8' corresponding to the bottom in the cavity 1 and, at the same time, evacuation is resumed, whereby the water of the pulp slurry 14 contained in the cavity 1 is discharged, and the pulp deposited body 5 is dewatered. In this manner the accumulated pulp fibers are effectively protected from being disturbed by the suction to provide a molded article with a uniform thickness similarly to the case of the third embodiment.

On dewatering the pulp deposited body 5 to a predetermined water content, the air feed pipe 13 inside the mold 10

is pulled down. Thereafter, the same operation as in the third embodiment is carried out to obtain a closed-end pulp molded article having a neck.

The fifth embodiment is practically the same as in the third and fourth embodiments, except that the air feed pipe is not used. In detail, the mold is immersed in a pulp slurry with its slurry inlet gate down. The pulp slurry is sucked up through the gate 9, whereby pulp fibers are accumulated on the net layer provided on the inner wall of the cavity to form a pulp deposited body. On forming a pulp deposited body to a prescribed thickness, evacuation is once stopped, and the mold is pulled up from the pulp slurry. The evacuation is resumed to dewater the pulp deposited body. After the water content is reduced to a prescribed level, the mold is opened to take out the pulp deposited body.

In the sixth embodiment, the pulp deposited body 5 formed in the first embodiment is dewatered under pressure by using the pressing member 6 as described above, and the mold 10 is opened to take out the pressure dewatered pulp deposited body 5, which is then set in a heating mold composed of a set of splits 21 and 22 shown in FIG. 9(a). The heating mold has previously been heated to a prescribed temperature. After setting, an edge finishing member 23 comprising a metal-made cylinder, etc. is brought down from above the opening 5' of the pulp deposited body 5. The edge finishing member 23 has a smooth and flat lower end. A part of a pressing member 24 of the same material and the same shape as the pressing member 6 used in the pressure dewatering is fixed to the inner wall of the edge, finishing member 23 near the lower end. In this state the upper edge of the opening 5' of the pulp deposited body 5 is pressed down by the edge finishing member 23, and, at the same time, the pressing member 24 is inserted inside the pulp deposited body 5. As shown in FIG. 9(b), it follows that the vicinity of the upper edge is protruded to have an increased thickness, and the shape of the lower end of the edge finishing member 23 is transferred to the upper edge of the opening 5' of the pulp deposited body 5 thereby to make it smooth and flat. A pressurizing fluid is then fed into the pressing member 24 to press the pulp deposited body 5 onto the inner wall of the split mold 21 and 22 via the pressing member 24 as shown in FIG. 9(c), whereby the pulp deposited body 5 is shaped in conformity to a desired shape and heat dried. After heat drying, the edge finishing member 23 is pulled up, and the pressing member 24 is also taken out of the pulp deposited body 5. The heating mold is opened to take out the pulp molded article. According to this embodiment, the shape of the opening edge of the pulp molded article can be controlled by appropriately selecting the shape of the lower end of the edge finishing member. As a result, the pulp molded article can have improved sealing properties with a cap, etc. and also improved strength at the opening thereof. In this embodiment, the pressing member 24 does not always need to be fixed to the edge finishing member 23, in which case the pressing member 24 is inserted either before or after the edge finishing member 23 is pressed down. The material and the shape of the pressing member 24 may be the same as or different from those of the pressing member 6 used for pressure dewatering.

FIG. 10 is a schematic illustration of a molding apparatus used in the seventh embodiment. This molding apparatus is roughly divided into a slurry feed section 30 and a paper-making section 40.

The slurry feed section 30 comprises a slurry storage tank 32 containing a pulp slurry 14, the tank 32 being equipped with a stirrer 31 for the pulp slurry 14, an injection pump 33 which sucks up the slurry 14 from the slurry storage tank 32

and feeds the slurry 14 under pressure into a mold 10, a flow meter 34 which measures the flow amount of the slurry 14, a first three-way valve 35 which switches the flow path of the slurry 14 between the direction to the mold and the direction to the slurry storage tank 32 according to the order given by the flow meter 34, and a second three-way valve 36 which switches the fluid to be fed to the mold 10 between the slurry 14 and air. The slurry storage tank 32, the injection pump 33, the flow meter 34, the first three-way valve 35, and the second three-way valve 36 are connected in series in the order described through piping 37.

The papermaking section 40 comprises a mold 10 composed of a set of splits 3 and 4 for papermaking each having a plurality of interconnecting holes (not shown) which connect the outside and the inside, a drain 41 for discharging water of the slurry injected into the cavity 1, a suction pump 42 which evacuates the cavity 1, and an on-off valve 43 which connects or disconnects the mold 10 and the suction pump 42. The slurry is supplied from the slurry feed section 30 to the cavity 1 through the piping 37 and an in-cavity pipe 38, both the piping 37 and the pipe 38 being connected to the second three-way valve 36. The in-cavity pipe 38 connected to the second three-way valve 36 is inserted into the cavity 1 through a slurry inlet gate 9.

The method of producing molded articles by use of the above-described molding apparatus is described below. First of all, the injection pump 33 is started up to suck up the slurry 14 from the slurry storage tank 32. The slurry 14 passes through the flow meter 34, the first three-way valve 35, and the second three-way valve 36 and is injected under pressure into the cavity 1 of the mold 10. The amount of flow of the slurry 14 is measured with the flow meter 34 in the line. Because the slurry is injected into the cavity 1 under pressure, and the top of the slurry inlet gate 9 is blocked, the water of the slurry injected into the cavity 1 is discharged out of the mold 10 through the interconnecting holes (not shown) which interconnect the inner wall of the cavity 1 to the outside of the mold 10 and through the drain 41. Meantime the pulp fibers of the slurry are deposited on the inner wall of the cavity 1 to form a pulp deposited body (not shown). Since the slurry injection is under pressure as mentioned above, the pressure of the slurry is equalized all over the inner wall of the cavity 1. Therefore, even in obtaining a deep molded article whose side walls rise at nearly right angles, a pulp deposited body of uniform thickness is formed on the inner wall of the cavity 1, and the finally obtained molded article also has a uniform thickness accordingly. Further, since the amount of the slurry to be injected into the cavity 1 is measured in an in line system, papermaking can be performed at a high speed. Furthermore, since the slurry is injected under pressure to cause forced dewatering, the speed of papermaking is further increased.

In order to form a pulp deposited body on the inner wall of the cavity 1 with a uniform thickness and to achieve high-speed papermaking, the pressure for injecting the slurry into the cavity 1 is preferably 0.01 to 5 MPa, particularly 0.01 to 3 MPa.

After a predetermined amount of the slurry is injected, the flow meter 34 gives an order to the first three-way valve 35 to make a changeover of the flow path. According to this order, the flow path of the first three-way valve 35 is switched over so that the slurry returns to the slurry storage tank 32 through a return pipe 37.

On completion of the slurry injection, the drain 41 is closed to stop drainage. Also, the second three-way valve 36

is switched to change the flow path to connect an air pressure feed pipe 37' and the in-cavity pipe 38. Air from an air feed source (not shown) is fed into the cavity 1 under pressure through the air pressure feed pipe 37' and the in-cavity pipe 38. Concurrently, the suction pump 42 is started up, and the on-off valve 43 is opened to evacuate the cavity 1. Through this series of operations the water content in the cavity 1 is completely sucked off, and the water content in the pulp deposited body formed on the inner wall of the cavity 1 is also sucked to dewater the pulp deposited body to a prescribed water content. While the pulp deposited body is dewatered by suction, since the inside of the cavity 1 is pressurized by the air, the pulp deposited body is strongly pressed onto the inner wall of the cavity 1. As a result, the thickness of the pulp deposited body is leveled more uniformly, and the configuration of the inner side of the cavity 1 is transferred to the pulp deposited body with good precision. Also, dewatering by suction is conducted quickly.

In order to make the thickness of the pulp deposited body more uniform and to achieve quick dewatering, the pressure for feeding air into the cavity 1 is preferably 0.01 to 5 MPa, particularly 0.01 to 3 MPa.

After the pulp deposited body is formed in the cavity 1, the in-cavity pipe 38 is drawn out. A pressing member similar to the pressing member 6 used in the first embodiment is inserted into the cavity 1 to dewater the pulp deposited body under pressure. Subsequently, the mold 10 is heated to heat dry the pulp deposited body. Alternatively, the mold 10 is opened to take out the pulp deposited body, which is heat dried in a separately prepared heating mold to obtain a pulp molded article.

In the eighth embodiment, an insert member 50 is inserted into the cavity 1 through the slurry inlet gate 9 of the mold 10 as shown in FIG. 11(a). The cavity configuration of the mold used in this embodiment is conformed to the contour of a carton. The insert member 50 has a supporting member 51 and a hollow or bag-like covering member 52 with which the supporting member 51 is covered. Both the supporting member 51 and the covering member 52 are fixed to a clamp plate 53 with a prescribed means. The supporting member 51 is cylindrical and has a large number of holes 54 on its side. The supporting member 51 has its end 51a projected outside through the clamp plate 53 and connected to a pressurizing fluid feed source (not shown). There is thus formed a passageway in the insert member 50 from the end 51a of the supporting member 51, through the inside of the supporting member 51 and the holes 54 on the side wall of the supporting member 51 to the inside of the covering member 52. The covering member 52 is made of a hollow, stretchable elastic member or a nonstretchable bag. Where the covering member 52 is made of an elastic member, the elastic member exhibits elasticity irrespective of whether or not it has a supporting member 51 therein, so that it is easy to keep the elastic member off the inner wall of the cavity 1 in the preliminary expansion hereinafter described. Where, on the other hand, the covering member 52 is made of a nonstretchable bag, the inside of the supporting member 51 is evacuated to bring the bag close to the supporting member 51 so as to keep the bag off the inner wall of the cavity 1 while the pulp deposited body is formed. In this particular embodiment, an elastic member is used as the covering member 52. The elastic member can be made of urethane, fluorine rubber, silicone rubber, elastomers, etc., which are excellent in tensile strength, impact resilience, stretchability, and the like. The nonstretchable bag can be of polyethylene, polypropylene, etc.

With the insert member 50 inserted in the cavity 1 and with the slurry inlet gate 9 blocked by the clamp plate 53, a

prescribed pressurizing fluid is supplied from a pressurized fluid source into the inside of the covering member 52 through the above-described passageway as shown in FIG. 11(b), thereby to preliminarily expand the covering member 52 to a prescribed size. The covering member 52 thus expanded preliminarily has an almost flat plate shape. The term "expand" as used herein means that the covering member 52 stretches to increase its volume (for example, in the case where the covering member 52 is made of a stretchable elastic member) and that the covering member 52 is not stretchable per se but capable of increasing its volume (for example, in the case where the covering member 52 is made of a nonstretchable bag which is in close contact with the supporting member 51 in an evacuated state). The term "inflate" as used herein has the same meanings.

The above-described preliminary expansion brings about an increase of the volume of the insert member 50, resulting in a reduction of the capacity of the cavity 1. This means that the water content of the pulp slurry injected in the cavity 1 decreases. Compared with what would result with no insert member 50, a higher concentration pulp slurry can be injected, and the cavity 1 can be filled with the pulp slurry in a shorter time. As a result, the molding cycle time including the pulp slurry injection time can be shortened. Because the volume of the insert member 50 can be increased within the cavity 1, the insert member 50 works effectively even in the production of bottles whose cross section at the neck is smaller than the cross section of the body. It is preferred that the capacity of the cavity 1 be decreased by preliminary expansion to 5 to 90%, particularly 40 to 75%, of the capacity before the insertion of the insert member 50.

While the covering member 52 is in a preliminarily expanded state, any part of the insert member 50 is not in touch with the inner wall of the cavity 1 as depicted in FIG. 11(b). Scatter of thickness of the pulp deposited body 5 is thus suppressed. In this state, a slurry is injected into the cavity 1 through a pulp slurry inlet 54 of the clamp plate 53, whereupon the water content of the pulp slurry is discharged out of the mold 10 through the interconnecting holes 2, and pulp fibers are accumulated on the inner wall of the cavity 1. As a result, there is formed a pulp deposited body 5 built up of the pulp fiber on the inner wall of the cavity 1.

After a predetermined amount of the pulp slurry has been injected, the feed is stopped, and the cavity 1 is completely evacuated for dewatering. Then, as shown in FIG. 11(c), the pressurizing fluid is further fed into the covering member 52 to further expand the covering member 52, by which the pulp deposited body 5 is pressed onto the inner wall of the cavity 1 and dewatered under pressure. It is preferred for the pulp deposited body 5 be dewatered by suction to a water content of 70 to 80% by weight and be further dewatered by pressing with the covering member 52 until the water content is reduced to 55 to 70%. Since injection of the pulp slurry into the cavity 1 is immediately followed by pressure dewatering, the time for mechanical operation can be reduced, leading to a reduction of the molding cycle time as compared with the embodiment where an injection nozzle is drawn after the slurry is injected, and an elastic member for pressure dewatering is then inserted. The pressure for feeding the pressurizing fluid for pressure dewatering is preferably 0.01 to 5 MPa, particularly 0.1 to 3 MPa.

After the configuration of the inner side of the cavity 1 is sufficiently transferred to the pulp deposited body 5, and the pulp deposited body 5 is dewatered to a prescribed water content, the pressurizing fluid in the covering member 52 is

withdrawn, whereupon the covering member 52 contracts to its original size as shown in FIG. 11(d). The insert member 50 is taken out of the cavity 1, and the mold 10 is opened to remove the pulp deposited body 5 having a prescribed water content. The pulp deposited body 5 is subsequently subjected to heat drying in the same manner as in the first embodiment.

The ninth embodiment, shown in FIG. 12, is the same as the eighth embodiment except for the construction of the pressing member and the step of pressing and dewatering the pulp deposited body.

As shown in FIG. 12, an insert member 50 is inserted into the cavity 1 of the mold 10 which is composed of a set of splits 3 and 4 butted to each other. The insert member 50 used in this embodiment is a rod having some thickness which is fixed at one end thereof to a clamp plate 53. In FIG. 12 is shown the side view of the rod. The rod is required to have such a volume as to reduce the capacity of the cavity 1 sufficiently when it is inserted into the cavity 1. From the standpoint of improvement on efficiency, for example, reduction of the molding cycle time, it is preferred to use a rod having such a volume as to reduce the capacity of the cavity 1 to 5 to 90%, particularly 40 to 75%. As long as this requirement is met, the rod may be either solid or hollow. When the insert member 50 is in an inserted state, any part of the insert member 50 is not in touch with the inner wall of the cavity 4 similarly in the eighth embodiment.

With the insert member 50 inserted and the slurry inlet gate 9 blocked, a pulp slurry is injected into the cavity 1 through a pulp slurry inlet 54. The water of the pulp slurry is discharged out of the mold 10 through the interconnecting holes 2, and pulp fibers are deposited on the inner wall of the cavity 1 to form a pulp deposited body. The pulp slurry may be injected through the inside of the insert member 50.

On injecting a predetermined amount of the pulp slurry, the injection is stopped, and the cavity 1 is completely evacuated for dewatering. Then, the insert member 50 is drawn from the cavity 1. Thereafter the pulp deposited body is subjected to pressure dewatering and heat drying in the same manner as in the first embodiment.

The tenth embodiment will now be described. This embodiment presents an example of production of a multi-layered pulp molded article having an outermost layer and an innermost layer.

As shown in FIG. 13(a), a predetermined amount of a first pulp slurry I is injected under pressure into the cavity 1 of the mold 10 through the slurry inlet gate 9. Pressure injection of the first pulp slurry I can be done by means of, e.g., a pump. The injection pressure of the first pulp slurry I is preferably 0.01 to 5 MPa, still preferably 0.01 to 3 MPa.

The cavity 1 being pressurized, the water of the first pulp slurry is discharged out of the mold 10, while the pulp fibers are accumulated on the inner wall of the cavity 1 to form a first pulp layer Sa as an outermost layer on the inner wall of the cavity 1 as shown in FIG. 13(b). A second pulp slurry II different from the first pulp slurry I in composition is then injected under pressure into the cavity 1 through the slurry inlet gate 9 of the mold 10. As a result, there is a mixed slurry comprising the first pulp slurry and the second pulp slurry in the cavity 1. The injection pressure of the second pulp slurry II can be about the same as that of the first pulp slurry I.

While the second pulp slurry is injected under pressure, dewatering from the cavity 1 is continued to form a mixed pulp layer (not shown) comprising the components of the mixed slurry on the first pulp layer Sa. Since the proportion

of the second to the first pulp slurries in the mixed slurry increases continuously with time, the composition of the mixed layer formed on the first pulp layer 5a continuously changes from first pulp slurry-rich to second pulp slurry-rich compositions.

As the second pulp slurry II is injected under pressure while continuing pressure dewatering as shown in FIG. 13(c), the composition of the mixed slurry in the cavity 1 finally becomes equal to the composition of the second pulp slurry. Eventually, as shown in the Figure, a second pulp layer 5b comprising the component of the second pulp slurry is formed on the mixed layer as an innermost layer.

In the production method according to this embodiment, injection of the first pulp slurry I and that of the second pulp slurry II into the cavity 1 are continuous so that the molded articles can be produced efficiently.

The first and the second pulp slurries are not particularly limited in kind as long as they have different compositions.

After the second pulp layer 5b is formed to a prescribed thickness, the pressure injection of the second pulp slurry is ceased, and air is introduced into the cavity 1 under pressure for dewatering. The thus obtained pulp deposited body is subjected to pressure dewatering and heat drying in the same manner as in Example 1 to obtain a multilayered pulp molded article.

The multilayered structure of the molded article obtained by the present embodiment is as shown in FIG. 14. Between the first pulp layer 5a as an outermost layer and a second pulp layer 5b as an innermost layer, there exists a mixed layer 5c whose composition continuously changes from that of the first pulp layer to that of the second pulp layer. As a result, the adhesion strength between the first pulp layer 5a and the second pulp layer 5b is increased, and separation of these layers is prevented effectively. The existence of the mixed layer 5c between the first pulp layer 5a and the second pulp layer 5b can be confirmed by microscopic observation of the cross section of the molded article.

The thicknesses of the first pulp layer 5a, the mixed layer 5c and the second pulp layer 5b are decided appropriately according to the use of the molded article and the like. Where, in particular, pulp fiber of low whiteness is used as an inner layer, it is preferred for the outermost layer (the first pulp layer 5a in this particular embodiment) to have a thickness of 5 to 50%, especially 10 to 50% of the total thickness of the molded article in order to secure sufficient hiding properties. The thickness of each layer depends on the amounts and the concentrations of the first and second pulp slurries.

Having a multilayer structure, the molded article obtained in this embodiment can have different functions served by the individual layers. For example, only the first pulp layer 5a as the outermost layer can be made a colored layer by incorporating a colorant, such as a pigment or a dye, or colored Japanese paper or a colored synthetic fiber into the first pulp slurry. In case where pulp having a relatively low whiteness, for example, pulp obtained from used paper, such as de-inked pulp, is compounded into the first pulp slurry (e.g., to a whiteness of 60% or more, particularly 70% or more), incorporating the colorant only into the first pulp slurry is advantageous in that the tone of that slurry can be adjusted with ease, the amount of the colorant to be compounded can be minimized, and the molded articles can be produced at a lower cost. The amount of the colorant to be added is preferably 0.1 to 15% by weight based on the pulp fiber. Further, the amount of de-inked pulp is reduced, making the molded article inexpensive.

Where a slurry comprising hard wood bleached pulp (LBKP) is used as the first pulp slurry, the resulting molded article has improved surface smoothness and suitability to printing or coating.

Incorporating additives, such as waterproofing agents, water repellents, water-vaporproofing agents, fixing agents, oilproofing agents, antifungal agents, antimicrobial agents, antistatic agents, and the like, into the first pulp slurry imparts the respective functions to the first pulp layer 5a as the outermost layer. It is preferred for the first pulp layer 5a containing these additives as the outermost layer to have a surface tension of 10 dyn/cm or less and a water repellency of R10 (JIS P 8137). Further, incorporating a particulate or fibrous thermoplastic synthetic resin to the first pulp slurry imparts abrasion resistance to the first pulp layer 5a to suppress fluffing and the like. The degree of abrasion resistance is preferably 3H or more in terms of pencil hardness (JIS K 5400).

It is particularly preferred for the pulp slurry to be used for forming the first pulp layer 5a as the outermost layer to contain pulp fibers having an average fiber length of 0.2 to 1.0 mm, particularly 0.25 to 0.9 mm, especially 0.3 to 0.8 mm, a Canadian Standard Freeness of 50 to 600 cc, particularly 100 to 500 cc, especially 200 to 400 cc, and such a frequency distribution of fiber length as comprises 50 to 95%, particularly 60 to 95%, especially 70 to 95%, based on the total fiber, of fibers whose length ranges from 0.4 mm to 1.4 mm (range A). Using such a pulp slurry brings about improved transfer of the inner configuration of the cavity.

It is preferred for the pulp slurry to be used for forming the second pulp layer 5b as the innermost layer to contain pulp fibers having an average length of 0.8 to 2.0 mm, particularly 0.9 to 1.8 mm, especially 1.0 to 1.5 mm, a Canadian Standard Freeness of 100 to 600 cc, particularly 200 to 500 cc, especially 300 to 400 cc, and such a frequency distribution of fiber length as comprises 20 to 90%, particularly 30 to 80%, especially 35 to 65%, based on the total fiber, of fibers whose length ranges from 0.4 mm to 1.4 mm (range A) and 5 to 50%, particularly 7.5 to 40%, especially 10 to 35%, based on the total fiber, of fibers whose length is more than 1.4 mm and not more than 3.0 mm (range B). Using such a pulp slurry effectively prevents development of cracks and thickness unevenness during papermaking. It is particularly preferred for enhancement of the above effects that the frequency distribution curve has a peak in each of ranges A and B. Where such a pulp slurry is used, the thickness of the innermost layer is preferably 30 to 95%, still preferably 50 to 90%, of the total thickness.

Where it is desired to obtain a certain characteristic by addition of a specified additive or pulp fiber, this can be achieved by adding the additive, etc. only to a specific layer where the desired characteristic is manifested most efficiently. This is advantageous in that the amount of the additive, etc. can be reduced as compared with the production of a monolayer pulp molded article.

According to the present embodiment, it is possible to produce a pulp molded article having more layers than the layer structure shown in FIG. 14. For example, as shown in FIG. 15, a third pulp layer 5d different in composition from both of the second pulp layer 5b and the first pulp layer 5a is formed on the side of the second pulp layer 5b shown in FIG. 14, and a mixed layer 5e whose composition continuously changes from the composition of the second pulp layer 5b to that of the third pulp layer 5d is formed between the

second pulp layer 5b and the third pulp layer 5d, making five layers in all. In this case, a multilayered molded article made up of a plurality of materials is obtained. In another case, another first pulp layer 5a' is formed on the side of the second pulp layer 5b shown in FIG. 14, and a mixed layer 5c' whose composition continuously changes from the composition of the second pulp layer 5b to that of the first pulp layer 5a' is formed between the second pulp layer 5b and the first pulp layer 5a', making five layers in all in which the innermost layer and the outermost layer have the same composition. In this case, making the first pulp layers 5a and 5a' of pulp having high whiteness and making the second pulp layer 5b of pulp having such whiteness as of used paper provide a molded article which has an appearance of high whiteness and yet is competitive in price.

The present invention is not limited to the above-described embodiments so that the steps, apparatus, members and the like in each of the above-described embodiments are interchangeable with each other. The molds that can be used in the present invention may be composed of a set of two or three or more splits in accordance with the shape of articles to be molded. The same applies to the heating molds.

EXAMPLES

The present invention will now be illustrated in greater detail, but it should be understood that the scope of the present invention is not construed as being limited thereto.

Examples 1 to 5

Bottles were molded by the method shown in FIG. 1. The particulars of the pulp in the slurry used are shown in Table 1 below. Molding properties in the molding are also shown in the Table. In Table 1, the LBKP used in Examples 1 to 4 is used paper used in OA equipment, which contains a large amount of virgin pulp and has a small freeness, while the LBKP used in Example 5 is CENIBRA (trade name), which contains a large amount of recycled pulp with a small amount of virgin pulp and has a large freeness.

TABLE 1

Ex. No.	Raw Material	Avg. Fiber Length (mm)	Freeness (cc)	Fiber Length Frequency Distribution		Molding Properties
				Range A	Range B	
1	used paper	1.50	390	43.4	28.5	good
2	NBKP/LBKP ⁺¹ = 70/30 ⁺²	1.29	350	57.5	22.0	good
3	used paper/ LBKP ⁺³ = 50/50 ⁺²	0.92	350	73.4	9.2	good
4	used paper/ LBKP ⁺³ = 30/70 ⁺²	0.87	450	77.4	7.6	good
5	used paper/ LBKP ⁺⁴ = 50/50 ⁺²	0.92	450	79.7	8.0	good

⁺¹Average fiber length of NBKP: 2.29 mm; average fiber length of LBKP: 0.82 mm

⁺²Weight ratio

⁺³Average fiber length of used paper: 1.5 mm; average fiber length of LBKP: 0.82 mm

⁺⁴Average fiber length of used paper: 1.5 mm; average fiber length of LBKP: 0.81 mm

As is apparently seen from the results in Table 1, the molded articles of Examples 1 to 5 prepared from a slurry containing pulp having a specific average fiber length, a specific freeness, and a specific fiber length frequency distribution show satisfactory molding properties. While not shown in the Table, the molded articles of Examples 2, 3 and

5 made of a blend of long pulp fibers and short pulp fibers had particularly excellent surface smoothness.

Examples 6 to 9

A slurry for outermost layer containing 1.0% by weight of pulp fiber the physical properties of which are shown in Table 2 was injected into the cavity of the mold shown in FIG. 13 through the slurry inlet gate under a pressure of 0.3 MPa. The cavity was dewatered to form an outermost layer of the slurry for outermost layer on the inner wall of the cavity. Concurrently with the formation of the outermost layer, a slurry for innermost layer containing 1.0% of pulp fiber whose physical properties are shown in Table 2 was injected into the cavity under a pressure of 0.3 MPa. Air is introduced into the cavity through the slurry inlet gate under a pressure of 0.1 MPa to form, on the outermost layer, a mixed layer of which the composition continuously changed from that of the slurry for outermost layer to that of the slurry for innermost layer and, on the mixed layer, an innermost layer was further formed of the slurry for innermost layer. A pressing member comprising an elastic member was inserted into the thus obtained pulp deposited body, and air was fed into the pressing member under a pressure of 1.5 MPa to press the pulp deposited body onto the inner wall of the cavity for dewatering.

The mold was opened to take out the pulp deposited body, which was then set in a heating mold having the same cavity configuration as the shaping mold. A pressing member comprising an elastic member is inserted into the pulp deposited body set in the heating mold. Air was introduced into the pressing member under a pressure of 1.5 MPa to press the pulp deposited body onto the inner wall of the cavity while heating the heating mold at 200° C. to dry the pulp deposited body. After the pulp deposited body dried sufficiently, the heating mold was opened to remove the molded bottle. The molding properties of the resulting molded article are shown in Table 2. The surface roughness of the molded article was measured with Surfcom 120A

available from Tokyo Seimitsu K.K. The transfer properties of the inner cavity configuration to the molded article were evaluated with the naked eye. A 70 mm long by 20 mm wide piece was cut out of the resulting molded article. The cut piece was partly separated along the mixed layer to prepare a Y-shaped specimen. The specimen was set on a tensile

tester with a chuck distance of 20 mm and peeled at a peel angle of 180° and a pulling speed of 30 mm/min. The results of the peel test are shown on Table 2. All these results obtained are shown in Table 2.

Examples 10

A bottle was molded in the same manner as in Example 6, except that the slurry for outermost layer was injected into the cavity to complete formation of the outermost layer, and then the slurry for innermost layer was injected into the cavity to form an innermost layer on the outermost layer. The resulting molded article had no mixed layer between the outermost layer and the innermost layer. The same measurements as described above were made on the resulting molded article. The results obtained are shown in Table 2.

TABLE 2

Pulp Fiber of Slurry for Outermost Layer														
Pulp Fiber of Slurry for Innermost Layer					Fiber Length		Thickness (mm)			Evaluation				
Avg. Fiber Length	Free-ness	Frequency Distribution (%)		Avg. Fiber Length	Free-ness	Frequency Distribution (%)	Thickness (mm)			Mold-ing Proper-	Surface Roughness	Transfer Proper-	Layer	
Ex.	Fiber Length		Frequency Distribution (%)	Fiber Length		Distrib-ution (%)	Inner-most	Mixed	Outer-most	ties	Ra (μm)	ties*	Separation	
No.	(mm)	(cc)	Range A	Range B	(mm)	(cc)	Range A	Layer	Layer	Layer				
6	1.50	310	43.4	28.5	0.64	280	72.8	300	100	100	good	2-3	A	not observed
7	1.50	310	43.4	28.5	0.64	280	72.8	200	100	200	good	2-3	A	not observed
8	1.50	310	43.4	28.5	0.48	100	56.3	300	100	100	good	1-2	A	not observed
9	1.50	310	43.4	28.5	0.93	400	73.0	300	100	100	good	3-5	B	not observed
10	1.50	310	43.4	28.5	0.64	280	72.8	350	0	150	good	2-3	A	slightly observed

*A: Neither cracking nor fluffing was observed.

B: No cracks developed, but fluffing was observed.

It is apparently seen from the results shown in Table 2 that the molded articles of Examples of which the innermost and outermost layers are formed by using slurries containing pulp fiber having specific physical properties are prevented from developing cracks or unevenness of thickness (development of a part whose thickness is half or less the average thickness or a part with such a reduced thickness as can be perceived when held up to the light) and have excellent surface smoothness. In particular, the molded articles of Examples 6 to 9 having a mixed layer formed between the innermost layer and the outermost layer have an increased peel strength between the innermost layer and the outermost layer as compared with the molded article of Example 10.

INDUSTRIAL APPLICABILITY

The present invention provides a method of producing a pulp molded article which enables designing a complicated shape and integrally molding an opening portion, a body portion, and a bottom portion with no joint seams. The production method of the present invention is applicable to not only hollow containers to put things in but other objects such as ornaments.

What is claimed is:

1. A pulp molded article obtainable by a process comprising:

supplying a pulp slurry into a cavity of a mold composed of a set of splits, the set of splits being assembled together to form said cavity with a prescribed configuration, to form a pulp deposited body, feeding a fluid into said cavity to press said pulp deposited body onto an inner wall of said cavity thereby dewatering said pulp deposited body,

wherein said pulp slurry contains pulp fibers selected from the group consisting of wood pulp fibers which are softwood pulp fibers or hardwood pulp fibers and non-wood pulp fibers having a length-weighted average fiber length of 0.8 to 2.0 mm, a Canadian Standard Freeness of 100 to 600 cc, and a frequency distribution of fiber length as follows: 20 to 90%, based on the total

fiber content have lengths from 0.4 mm to 1.4 mm, and 5 to 50%, based on the total fiber content have lengths longer than 1.4 mm and not longer than 3.0 mm.

2. A pulp molded article obtainable by a process comprising:

supplying a pulp slurry into a cavity of a mold composed of a set of splits, the set of splits being assembled together to form said cavity with a prescribed configuration, to form a pulp deposited body, feeding a fluid into said cavity to press said pulp deposited body onto an inner wall of said cavity thereby dewatering said pulp deposited body,

said pulp molded article having an outermost layer and an innermost layer,

wherein the pulp slurry used to form said innermost layer contains pulp fibers having a length-weighted average fiber length of 0.8 to 2.0 mm, a Canadian Standard Freeness of 100 to 600 cc, and a frequency distribution of fiber length as follows: 20 to 90%, based on the total fiber content of the innermost layer, have fiber lengths from 0.4 mm to 1.4 mm, and 5 to 50%, based on the total fiber content of the innermost layer, have lengths longer than 1.4 mm and not longer than 3.0 mm, and

25

wherein the pulp slurry used to form said outermost layer contains pulp fibers having a length-weighted average fiber length of 0.2 to 1.0 mm, a Canadian Standard Freeness of 50 to 600 cc, and such a frequency distribution of fiber length as comprises 50 to 95%, based on the total fiber content of the outermost layer, of fibers

whose length ranges from 0.4 mm to 1.4 mm. 5

3. The pulp molded article as claimed in claim 2,

wherein said pulp slurry is a pulp slurry containing pulp fibers selected from the group consisting of non-wood

26

pulp fibers, softwood pulp fibers and hardwood pulp fibers, and

further comprising a mixed layer which is located in between said outermost layer and said innermost layer, wherein said mixed layer has a composition that continuously changes from that of said outermost layer to that of said innermost layer.

* * * * *

(12) **United States Patent**
Morgan, Jr.

(10) **Patent No.:** **US 6,315,748 B1**
 (45) **Date of Patent:** **Nov. 13, 2001**

(54) **METHOD AN APPARATUS FOR
 TREATMENT OF COMPRESSIVE
 SYNDROME CONDITIONS**

(76) **Inventor:** Clyde E. Morgan, Jr., 20124 W. 151st
 St., Olathe, KS (US) 66061

(*) **Notice:** Subject to any disclaimer, the term of this
 patent is extended or adjusted under 35
 U.S.C. 154(b) by 0 days.

(21) **Appl. No.:** 09/663,496

(22) **Filed:** Sep. 18, 2000

(51) **Int. Cl.** A61F 5/00

(52) **U.S. Cl.** 602/21; 128/878; 128/879;
 2/20

(58) **Field of Search** 128/846, 878,
 128/879, 889; 602/20, 21; 2/16, 20

(56) **References Cited**

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

5,921,949 7/1999 Dray.

OTHER PUBLICATIONS

Magister Corporation, Chattanooga, TN brochure re Rep
 Band (1998).

Sports Medical Rehab brochure re Resist-A-Band.

3M Product Clinical Data Summary re No. 1521 3M Plastic
 Medical Tape.

Kessler et al; Friction Massage, Physical Therapy Principles
 and Methods, 3rd ed. 1996, Chapter 7.

Hygenic Corporation brochure re Hytone Latex Sheeting
 Specifications.

3M Product Specification for Plastic Medical Tape, No.
 1527-L.

Primary Examiner—Michael A. Brown

(74) *Attorney, Agent, or Firm*—Hovey, Williams, Timmons
 & Collins

(57)

ABSTRACT

An orthopedic device (10) is provided for the treatment of
 physical disorders characterized by region(s) of localized,
 undue compression of body tissue leading to nerve com-
 pression and/or damage, such as carpal tunnel syndrome. A
 carpal tunnel syndrome treatment device (10) in accordance
 with the invention includes a central, resilient, stretchable
 tensioning segment (12) with a plurality of relatively less
 stretchable adhesive straps (14–18) secured to the segment
 (12). In use, the segment (12) is placed on the back of a
 patient's hand (20), whereupon the straps (14–18) are pulled
 and adhered to the patient's palm in a fashion to expand the
 segment (12). In this orientation, the control segment (12)
 exerts continuous yielding or tensile forces through the
 straps (14–18) which in turn reduces carpal tunnel syndrome
 nerve compression and alleviates symptoms.

12 Claims, 2 Drawing Sheets

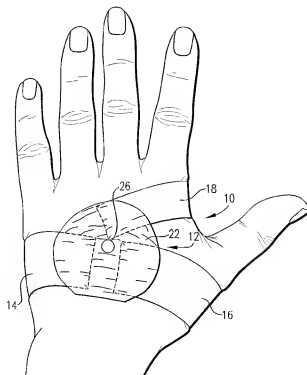


FIG. 1

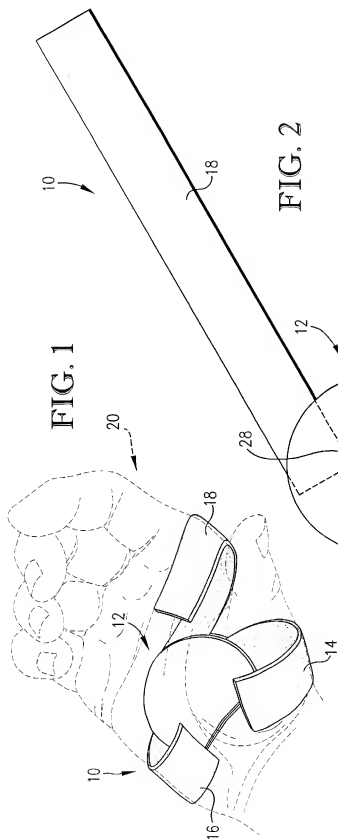


FIG. 2

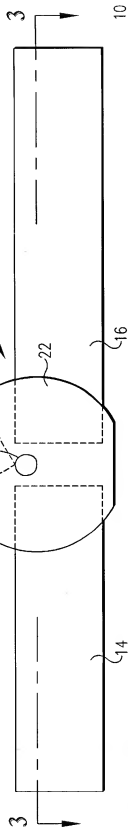
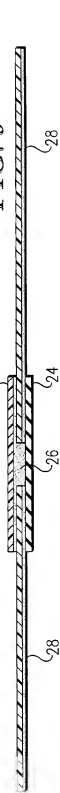


FIG. 3





METHOD AN APPARATUS FOR TREATMENT OF COMPRESSIVE SYNDROME CONDITIONS

BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION

1. Field of the Invention

The present invention is broadly concerned with improved method and apparatus for the treatment of compressive syndrome physical disorders characterized by a region of localized, undue compression of body tissue, for example, carpal tunnel syndrome. More particularly, the invention is concerned with such methods and devices wherein use is made of a central tensioning segment formed of resilient, stretchable material (e.g., synthetic elastomer or latex rubber) together with a plurality of adhesive attachment straps of limited stretchability secured to the tensioning segment for securement of the device on a person's body. The tensioning segment exerts a continuous yielding or tensile force through the straps, serving to at least partially reduce the troublesome tissue compression.

2. Description of the Prior Art

Carpal tunnel syndrome and related conditions result from repeated trauma to the tendons and soft tissue structures forming a part of the wrist. Excessive pressure on the carpal tunnel contents, including the flexor tendons, nerves and bursa, results in abnormal function, weakness, inflammation, pain, numbness and ultimately in nerve tissue injury.

The flexor retinaculum is a thick, relatively unyielding ligamentous band that crosses the groove on the palmar surface of the carpal bones. It is composed of the palmar (volar) carpal ligament and transverse (anterior annular) carpal ligament. The palmar carpal ligament is attached medially and laterally to the styloid processes of the radius and ulna. The transverse carpal ligament is attached medially to the pisiform bone and the hamulus of the hamate, and laterally to the tuberosity of the scaphoid and palmar surface of the ridge of the greater multangular (trapezium). The fibers of these ligaments merge at the distal end of palmar and proximal end of the transverse ligament. Together with the carpal bones and articulations, they form a tunnel through which pass the deep flexor tendons and median nerve.

The median nerve passes through the carpal tunnel adjacent the flexor retinaculum and between it and the flexor tendons and their bursa. The carpal tunnel is barely adequate to accommodate these structures and it is generally felt that any narrowing of the diameter of the tunnel or decrease in the diameter to contents ratio, causes injury to the median nerve by repeatedly pressing it against the relatively unyieldable retinaculum. Repetitive and/or constant forceful movement, in particular extension movements of the hand, are thought to repeatedly traumatize the median nerve in this manner, as does the repetitive and/or constant force contraction of the thenar muscles.

Current medical treatment of carpal tunnel syndrome consists of rest, restriction from traumatizing activities, limiting movement with restrictive splints, anti-inflammatory medication and cortisone injections. In advanced cases surgery is used to transect and spread the transverse carpal ligament to allow more room for the contents of the carpal tunnel, i.e., an increase in the diameter to contents ratio. Some form of wrist support or splint is normally used in the early stages of treatment. They are used in an attempt to delay progression of the condition or as an adjunct to some other treatment in an effort to lessen the pain

and aid in the return to normal function. Subsequent to surgery, wrist splints are frequently used to support the wrist and aid in recovery. Thus it is important that a presurgical device be provided which corrects the condition or prevents further development and/or progression of the condition.

Given the widespread incidence of carpal tunnel syndrome and similar disorders, many attempts have been made to provide orthopedic supports or braces for the wrists which will alleviate the symptoms and/or provide a means of eliminating the problem in its entirety. For example, U.S. Pat. No. 5,921,949 describes a corrective support designed specifically for the treatment of a tunnel syndrome. However, none of these past efforts have resulted in a truly effective device or treatment for the syndrome. Therefore, the traditional treatments described previously remain the methods of choice in most cases.

In addition to carpal tunnel syndrome, a number of other compressive syndrome conditions have been identified. These include radial tunnel syndrome (sometimes referred to as "tennis elbow"). In this condition, the supinator muscle, while turning the wrist in the clockwise direction compresses the radial nerve. The radial nerve feeds the muscles of the back of the forearm. It is most commonly seen with twisting activities of the arm. Pain if first noticed at the lateral side of the elbow, about two inches toward the wrist from the elbow. Rest is currently the best treatment to allow swelling to go down. DeQuervain's Tenosynovitis is a problem of the abductor pollicis longus and extensor pollicis longus tendons which irritate the bursa coating, called tenosynovium becoming tenosynovitis when inflammation occurs. Irritation continues forming scar tissues. The present treatment protocol attempts to reduce the swelling in the area by reducing the usage.

Frozen shoulder is a joint dysfunction and is often caused by adherence of the anteroinferior aspect of the joint capsule to the humeral head. This condition often occurs after injury, being a scar formation type dysfunction. Piriformis Syndrome is a condition where the sciatic nerve is compressed between the piriformis muscle and the gemellus muscle.

Guyons' Canal syndrome is a common nerve compression affecting the ulnar nerve and possibly the ulnar artery as it passes through a tunnel in the wrist on the lateral portion. The problem is similar to carpal tunnel syndrome, but involves a completely different nerve. Sometimes both conditions can be causing problems in the same hand.

Thoracic Kyphosis is the loss of movement in the upper back area, described as a derangement syndrome and is caused by adaptive shortening, as a result from poor postural habits over a sustained period. Derangement syndrome is caused by a disturbance of some structure with the joint causing mechanical deformation of pain sensitive structures.

Trigger points are muscle conditions where an involved area is relatively spasm, building up lactic acid in the muscle, with resultant pain.

After surgery, scar tissue can ball up and contract, in unnatural orientations. This can cause severe pain to a patient.

While all of these types of compressive syndrome conditions have been recognized for many years, there has been no readily available, non-surgical treatment available to alleviate the symptoms thereof.

SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

The present invention overcomes the problems outlined above and provides an improved device for the treatment of

compressive syndrome disorders such as carpal tunnel syndrome, but also including radial tunnel syndrome, DeQuervain's Tenosynovitis, frozen shoulder, Piriformis Syndrome, Guyon's Canal Syndrome, thoracic kyphosis, and scar tissue conditions. Broadly speaking, the devices of the invention include a tensioning segment formed of elastic, stretchable material adapted for placement on a person's body proximal to the region of localized tissue compression, together with a plurality of elongated, adhesive straps secured at respective locations to the tensioning segment; the straps have less stretchability (and are preferably essentially non-stretchable) than the tensioning segment and are configured for securing the tensioning segment in place on a person's body. When applied, the tensioning segment of the device exerts yielding or tensile forces through the straps serving to at least partially reduce tissue compression.

In the case of a carpal tunnel syndrome treatment device, the tensioning segment is adapted to overlie the back of a person's hand, and has three individuals straps secured thereto. Two of the attachment straps are oriented to extend end opposite directions from the tensioning segment and to wrap about the heel of the person's hand below the person's thumb; the other of the straps is oriented to wrap about the person's hand between the thumb and forefinger.

In preferred forms, the tensioning segment includes an expansion indicator allowing the user to determine the extent of expansion of the segment upon application of the device. In practice, a circular marking on the tensioning segment is used for this purpose. Additionally, the tensioning segment is preferably formed at least in part of stretchable latex material, whereas the attachment straps are made of essentially nonstretchable polyethylene film coated with pressure are sensitive adhesive.

BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS

FIG. 1 is a perspective view all of a person's right hand (shown in phantom) with a preferred treatment device in accordance with the invention applied to the person's hand for the treatment of carpal tunnel syndrome;

FIG. 2 is a plan view of the preferred carpal tunnel syndrome treating device in accordance with the invention, with a left hand model being shown;

FIG. 3 is a sectional view taken long line 2—2 of FIG. 2 and illustrating one form of interconnection between the central tensioning segment of the device and the adhesive attachment straps;

FIG. 4 is an elevational view of the preferred treatment device of the invention, shown mounted on a person's left hand;

FIG. 5 is a view similar to that of FIG. 4, but showing the palm side of the person's left hand and the placement of the adhesive straps; and

FIG. 6 is a sectional view along line 6—6 of FIG. 5 and illustrating the manner in which the treatment device alleviates the symptoms of carpal tunnel syndrome.

DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF THE PREFERRED EMBODIMENT

Turning now to the drawings, and particularly FIGS. 2 and 3, a carpal tunnel syndrome treating device 10 is illustrated. Broadly speaking, the device 10 includes a central resilient tensioning segment 12 as well as three elongated straps 14, 16 and 18 secured to be segment 12. The device 10 is designed to be applied to the hand 20 of a person in order to alleviate carpal tunnel syndrome symptoms.

In more detail, the tensioning segment 12 is made up of a pair of the arcuate, face-to-face oriented flexible sheets 22 and 24, which are bonded together by adhesive 26 or direct thermal bonding of the sheets. As illustrated, the inboard ends of the straps 14—18 are received and bonded between the sheets 22, 24, with the adhesive 26 serving to secure the straps in place; again, if the sheets 22, 24 are thermally bonded, the straps 14—18 would be secured thereto by virtue of such thermal bonding. An important feature of the invention resides in the fact that the segment 12 is formed of elastic, stretchable material which, when stretched, exerts a continuous yielding or tensile force on the straps 14—18. To this end, it is preferred that the bottom sheet 24 is formed of conventional synthetic elastomer material, whereas the upper sheet 22 is formed of adhesive-bearing medical tape which is also stretchable with the sheet 24 (in this embodiment, the adhesive forming a part of the medical tape functions as the adhesive 26; in other cases a separately applied adhesive can be employed). It will also be seen that the upper sheet 22 has an expansion indicator 28 thereon, in the form of a circular marking. Where the tensioning segment 12 is formed of heat-bonded sheets, both such sheets may be formed of appropriate synthetic resin material such as Hysynal commercialized by Hygenic Corporation. The Hysynal product has a 300% modulus (ASTM D412) of 250 psi; a tensile strength (AS TM D412) of 2200 psi; an ultimate elongation ASTM D412) of 600%; and a durometer hardness (ASTM D2240) of 40±5 Shore A (plid). A typical latex rubber used for the fabrication of the segment 12 is the Hytone latex commercialized by Hygenic Corporation. This product has a 300% modulus of 130 psi, a tensile strength of 4000 psi, and an ultimate elongation of 780%.

Generally speaking, stretchable products used in this context should have a modulus of from about 75—400 psi, a tensile strength from about 1500—5000 psi, and an ultimate elongation of from about 200—1000% (ASTM D412).

Each of the straps 14—18 have significantly less stretchability than the tensioning segment 12. Preferably, these straps are formed of essentially non-stretchable medical quality tape or ethylene vinyl acetate, with a layer 28 of conventional skin adhesive on the underside thereof. This adhesive is advantageously hypoallergenic in order to eliminate skin irritation. As seen, the opposed straps 14 and 16 have a width somewhat greater than that of the angularly oriented strap 18.

It will be appreciated that the device 10 will be provided in left and right hand versions. The right hand version is illustrated in FIG. 1, whereas the left hand version is shown in FIGS. 2—5.

The device 10 is applied to the hand 20 of a person in the general manner shown in FIGS. 1 and 4—5. That is, in the first step, the tensioning segment 12 is placed on the back of the person's hand. Next, the straps 14 and 16 are sequentially pulled and applied to the palm region of the hand 20 as best seen in FIG. 5. During this application of the straps 14, 16, the user observes the indicator 26, and pulls the second-applied strap sufficiently to enlarge the indicator by approximately 30%. In the final step, the strap 18 is pulled upwardly and angularly between the thumb and forefinger of the hand, with the outer end of the strap being applied to the palm region of the hand 20 above the ends of the straps 14, 16, insuring that the outboard ends of the straps 14—18 do not overlap in the palmar region. Here again, during application of the strap 18, the indicator circle 26 is used so as to insure a substantially even expansion of the tensioning segment 12.

In more detail, during the first week of using the device 10, the tensioning segment 12 is placed on the back side of

the hand, between the first bend of the small finger and where the wrist bends, with the straight edge of the segment 12 at the center of the hand. Next, the strap 14 is applied as described previously, followed by the straps 16 and 18. During the first week, the device 12 is worn for period of 10-16 hours per day. During the second week of therapy, the segment 12 is placed on the back side of the hand, just distal to where the wrist bends on the side of the little finger, with the edge of the segment at the center of the hand. Placement of the straps 14-18 is the same as during the first week. After the second week, further use of the device 10 is carried out to achieve the most comfort and pain relief for the patient.

Attention is next directed to FIG. 6, which depicts the manner in which it is believed that the device 10 operates to alleviate the symptoms of carpal tunnel syndrome. As illustrated, the human wrist includes a complex of articulations and tendons including the Pisiform, Triquetrum, Lunate, Capitate, and Scaphoid bones 30-38, respectively, the common synovial sheath 40, median nerve 42, digit tendons 44, ulnar artery 45, ulnar nerve 45a, and flexor retinaculum 46. The carpal tunnel 48, through which the median nerve 42 passes, is also illustrated in FIG. 6. As explained previously, carpal tunnel syndrome involves a condition wherein the median nerve 42 and surrounding tissues are subjected to undue compression, which is accompanied by shortening of the flexor retinaculum.

Use of the device 10 alleviates carpal tunnel syndrome symptoms by virtue of the continuing yielding or tensile forces exerted on the straps 14-18 by the tensioning segment 12. That is, and as indicated by directional arrows 50-56, the segment 12 effectively "pulls" at the area of the carpal tunnel and flexor retinaculum to lengthen the latter, thereby enlarging the carpal tunnel 48 and relieving pressure on the median nerve 42 and ulnar nerve 45a.

The device 10 is also advantageous in that it can be worn by a patient without interfering with the patient's normal activities; indeed, the device can be worn while sleeping or during daytime routines, even under gloves or other protective equipment. At the same time, the invention reduces the possible need for carpal tunnel syndrome surgery and obviates tiresome repetitive exercises and other related physical therapies.

Although a device for treating carpal tunnel syndrome has been specifically illustrated and described herein, it will be appreciated that the invention is not so limited. First and foremost, devices may be provided having as few as two straps and as many as needed for a particular condition. Thus, for the treatment of tennis elbow, it is anticipated that only a two-strap model would be required, with the central tensioning segment applied adjacent the proximal radial head of the radial bone, and with the two-straps extending in opposite directions therefrom. By exerting tension against the stronger muscle in this region, and providing more support for the adjacent weaker muscle, the tendency for the tissue to remain in an abnormal position is lessened, by reducing the intrinsic concentric muscular contraction.

Similarly, scar tissue conditions can be alleviated using devices in accordance with the invention. In such therapy, two of the devices would typically be used, one on each side of the scar formation. In this fashion, a stress is exerted in a direction parallel with the normal fiber orientation so as to stimulate reorientation of the involved scar tissue.

Patients suffering from trigger point muscle conditions can also be helped using the devices hereof. Two approaches can be used in this context. First, the device can be placed with one of the strap ends over the trigger point pain area,

with the other strap end over a normal muscle. During motion, the applied device tends to extend the contracted trigger point muscle. Alternately, a plurality of individual devices may be placed about the trigger point muscle area to generate muscle extension forces.

I claim:

1. A device for treating physical disorders characterized by a region of localized, undue compression of body tissue, said device comprising:

a tensioning segment formed of elastic, stretchable material adapted for placement on a person's body proximal to said region; and

a plurality of elongated, adhesive straps secured at respective locations to said tensioning segment, said straps having less stretchability than said tensioning segment and being configured for securing said tensioning segment in place on the person's body, said tensioning segment exerting forces through said straps serving to at least partially reduce said compression at said region.

2. The device of claim 1, said device adapted for the treatment of carpal tunnel syndrome, said tensioning segment adapted to overlie the back of a person's hand, there being three of said straps secured to said tensioning segment, two of said segments oriented to extend in the opposite directions from said segment to wrap about the heel of the person's hand below the person's thumb, the other of said straps wrapping about the person's hand between the person's thumb and forefinger.

3. The device of claim 1, said tensioning segment including an expansion indicator permitting the user to determine the extent of expansion of the tensioning segment in different directions, upon attachment of the device.

4. The device of claim 3, said expansion indicator comprising a circular marking on the outer face of said tensioning segment.

5. The device of claim 1, said tensioning segment including a pair of opposed, flexible sheets adhesively secured together.

6. The device of claim 5, the ends of said straps being received and sandwiched between said flexible sheets.

7. The device of claim 1, each of said straps formed of polyethylene film having one face thereof coated with a pressure sensitive acrylic adhesive.

8. The device of claim 1, said tensioning segment formed of resilient latex.

9. The device of claim 1, said device being configured for the treatment of conditions selected from the group consisting of radial tunnel syndrome, DeQuervain's Tenosynovitis, frozen shoulder, Piriformis Syndrome, Guyon's Canal Syndrome, thoracic kyphosis, and scar tissue conditions.

10. A method of treating a physical disorder characterized by a region of localized, undue compression of body tissue, said method comprising the steps of:

placing a tensioning segment on a person's body proximal to said region, said tensioning segment formed of elastic, stretchable material and having a plurality of elongated, adhesive straps secured to the tensioning segment at respective locations of thereon, said straps having less stretchability than said tensioning segment; and

stretching said tensioning segment by exerting tensile forces through said straps, and adhesively attaching said straps on the person's body,

said tensioning segment exerting forces through said straps serving to at least partially reduce said compression at said region.

11. The method of claim 10, said physical disorder being 5
carpal tunnel syndrome, said placing step comprising the step of placing said tensioning segment on the back of the person's hand, said stretching and attaching step comprising the steps of extending a pair of said straps in opposite directions from said segment and wrapping the straps about the heel of the person's hand below to person's thumb, and

extending a third straps from said tensioning segment and wrapping the third straps about the person's hand between the person's thumb and forefinger.

12. The method of claim 10, said disorder selected from the group consisting of radial tunnel syndrome, DeQuervain's Tenosynovitis, frozen shoulder, Piriformis Syndrome, Guyon's Canal Syndrome, thoracic kyphosis, and scar tissue conditions.

* * * * *

[54] HIGH-DENSITY ABSORBENT STRUCTURES

[76] Inventors: Paul T. Weisman; Stephen A. Goldman, both of P.O. Box 39175, Cincinnati, Ohio 45247

[21] Appl. No.: 529,900

[22] Filed: Sep. 6, 1983

Related U.S. Application Data

[63] Continuation-in-part of Ser. No. 507,824, Jan. 24, 1983, abandoned, which is a continuation-in-part of Ser. No. 437,846, Mar. 10, 1983, abandoned.

[51] Int. Cl.⁴ A61F 13/16

[52] U.S. Cl. 604/368; 604/379

[58] Field of Search 604/368, 379, 380

[56] References Cited

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

2,750,944	6/1956	Tollstrup	128/290
3,070,095	12/1962	Torr	128/284
3,187,747	6/1965	Burgenl	128/156
3,241,553	3/1966	Steiger	128/156
3,344,789	10/1967	Arnold et al.	128/287
3,347,236	10/1967	Torr	128/284
3,381,688	5/1968	Satas	128/296
3,528,421	9/1970	Vaillancourt et al.	128/284
3,661,154	5/1972	Torr	128/284
3,669,103	6/1972	Harper et al.	128/156
3,670,731	6/1972	Harmon	128/284
3,731,686	5/1973	Chatterjee	128/285
3,783,872	1/1974	King	128/290 R
3,888,257	6/1975	Cook et al.	128/296
3,901,236	8/1975	Assarsson et al.	128/284
3,971,379	7/1976	Chatterjee	128/285
4,055,180	10/1977	Karami	128/287
4,062,817	12/1977	Westerman	260/17.45 G
4,076,663	2/1978	Masuda et al.	260/17.4 G
4,102,340	7/1978	Mesek et al.	128/287
4,103,062	7/1978	Aberson et al.	428/283
4,105,033	8/1978	Chatterjee et al.	128/285
4,208,459	6/1980	Becker et al.	604/368
4,212,302	7/1980	Karami	128/287
4,217,901	8/1980	Bradstreet et al.	128/290 R
4,232,674	11/1980	Melican	128/287
4,235,237	11/1980	Mesek et al.	128/284

4,252,761	2/1981	Schoggen et al.	264/120
4,286,082	8/1981	Tsubakimoto et al.	526/240
4,327,728	5/1982	Elias	128/285
4,333,461	6/1982	Muller	128/284
4,333,462	6/1982	Holtman et al.	128/287
4,333,463	6/1982	Holtman	128/287
4,340,556	7/1982	Ciencewicz	604/368
4,354,487	10/1982	Oczkowski et al.	128/156
4,354,901	10/1982	Kopolow et al.	162/158
4,381,782	5/1983	Mazurak et al.	604/368
4,475,911	10/1984	Gellert	604/367
4,500,315	2/1985	Pieniak et al.	604/379

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

2293913	7/1976	France
13409451	10/1976	Japan
9904677	7/1977	Japan
6563056	6/1981	Japan
549213	11/1942	United Kingdom
1406615	9/1975	United Kingdom
1500559	2/1978	United Kingdom
1548156	7/1979	United Kingdom

OTHER PUBLICATIONS

Carus, "The Development and Uses of Superabsorbents in Incontinent Products", *Insight 80 Proceedings*, Nov. 19-21, 1980.

Buckeye Cellulose, Disclosure No. 15049, *Research Disclosure*, Oct. 1976, pp. 29-30.

Erickson et al; "Absorbent Laminate for Low Bulk, High Capacity Personal Care Products", *Insight 80 Proceedings*, Nov. 19-21, 1980.

Primary Examiner—Stephen C. Pellegrino

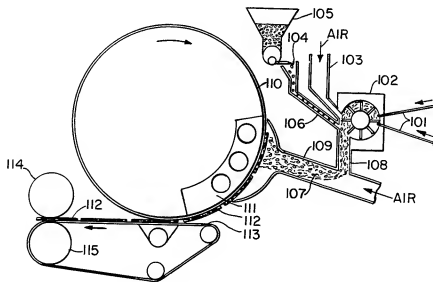
Assistant Examiner—S. E. Vinyard

[57]

ABSTRACT

Absorbent structures comprising a mixture of hydrophilic fibers and discrete particles of a water insoluble hydrogel are disclosed. The fiber/hydrogel ratio ranges from about 30:70 to about 98:2. The absorbent structures have a density of from about 0.15 g/cm³ to about 1 g/cm³. The structures are flexible, and have superior absorption capacities for water and body fluids.

33 Claims, 1 Drawing Figure



HIGH-DENSITY ABSORBENT STRUCTURES

The present application is a continuation-in-part of application Ser. No. 507,824 filed June 24, 1983, and now abandoned, which is a continuation-in-part of application Ser. No. 437,846 filed Mar. 10, 1983, and now abandoned.

TECHNICAL FIELD

This invention relates to flexible, substantially unbonded, absorbent structures comprising a mixture of hydrophilic fibers and discrete particles of a water-insoluble hydrogel. Flexible absorbent structures, generally non-woven sheets or fibrous webs, have the ability to absorb significant quantities of fluids like water and body exudates. They are used, for example, as disposable towels, facial tissues, toilet tissue, or as absorbent cores in absorbent products like disposable diapers and sanitary napkins. Generally, such structures are made of inexpensive hydrophilic fibers, typically wood pulp fibers.

Water-insoluble hydrogels are polymeric materials which are capable of absorbing large quantities of water, typically more than 20 times their own weight. When first introduced, these materials were expected to generate a major breakthrough in the world of disposable absorbent consumer products (i.e. products like disposable diapers, sanitary napkins, incontinent pads, and the like). Yet, up to this day, no large-scale use of water-insoluble hydrogels in disposable absorbent products has taken place. The reason is that, in spite of the extremely high water absorption capacities of hydrogels, their performance when used in disposable absorbent products has been unacceptable.

One cause of the poor performance of hydrogels is a phenomenon called gel blocking. The term gel blocking describes a phenomenon that occurs when a hydrogel particle, film, fiber, etc. is wetted; the surface swells and inhibits liquid transmission to the interior. Wetting of the interior subsequently takes place via a very slow diffusion process. In practical terms this means that the absorption is much slower than discharge of fluid to be absorbed, and failure of a diaper or sanitary napkin or other absorbent structure may take place well before the hydrogel material in the absorbent structure is fully wet.

Water-insoluble hydrogels have a water absorbent capacity which far exceeds, generally by far more than an order of magnitude, the absorbent capacity for water of wood pulp fibrous webs which are typically used in disposable absorbent consumer products. The absorption capacity for an electrolyte containing fluid, like urine, is much less but still up to about an order of magnitude higher than that of fibrous webs. Many workers in the field have therefore attempted to somehow incorporate hydrogel materials into wood pulp fiber webs in order to increase the fluid absorption capacities of such webs. Early attempts involved simple mixing of hydrogel powder into the fibrous web. This approach did not lead to any increase of the bulk absorption capacity of the web. (See, for example, R. E. Ericson, "First International Absorbent Products Conference Proceedings", November, 1980, Section 6 at page 3). Ericson reports that "fluid retention under pressure is increased but bulk capacity remains essentially the same". Several explanations for this phenomenon have been given. Ericson ascribes it to the fact that the fibrous matrix prevents

swelling of the hydrogel particles. Others believe that the very poor wicking characteristics of hydrogels are responsible for the disappointing performance. Whatever the cause may be, it is well established that simple mixtures of hydrophilic fibers and hydrogel particles do not have the absorption capacity one would expect on the basis of the respective contributions of the components of such mixtures.

Based upon the assumption that the poor wicking of hydrogels causes their poor performance in disposable absorbent structures, some workers in the field have attempted to improve hydrogel performance by introducing fibers into the hydrogel particles. This may be achieved by wet laying of mixtures of hydrogel particles and hydrophilic fibers. During the wet stage of such a process the hydrogel swells. During the drying step the hydrogel tends to retract. As a result the gel spreads over the fiber surface and creates fiber-fiber bonds, in a manner not dissimilar from the bonding which occurs when binders (e.g. latex) are used. As a result of the wet treatment and the bonding by the hydrogel, the resulting absorbent structure is very stiff. It has been disclosed that the stiffness of such structures may be reduced by subjecting the structure to a high pressure. Even when so treated, the stiffness of such structures is still relatively high, especially when fiber/hydrogel ratios of more than 50:50 are used. Such fiber/hydrogel ratios are, however, very desirable from a cost standpoint: hydrogel is far more expensive than, for example, wood pulp fibers. Moreover, the art-disclosed processes involve the handling of large amounts of water and subsequent drying. This adds significantly to the manufacturing costs of the absorbent structures.

Another approach has been to form laminated structures, whereby a layer of hydrogel material is placed against a layer of a material having good wicking properties. The wicking layer spreads the liquid over a larger surface of the hydrogel layer, so that more of the hydrogel is exposed to the liquid to be absorbed. It has been claimed that such structures provide a higher absorption capacity than e.g. mixtures of hydrogel particles in hydrophilic fibrous webs. The wicking layer provides spreading of the liquid across the surface of the hydrogel layer, but does not ensure penetration into the hydrogel layer. The latter liquid movement is still severely limited by gel blocking. In other words, absorbent structures as they are known in the art fail to fully exploit the absorption potential of hydrogels.

There is therefore a continuing need for absorbent structures which are flexible and which more fully exploit the absorbent capacity of hydrogels than has heretofore been possible. The absorbent structures of the present invention provide superior absorbent capacity and excellent wicking properties, and yet are flexible, resilient, and have good lateral integrity. These structures are uniquely adapted for use in disposable diapers which are extremely thin and comfortable but which have an absorbent capacity which is at least equal to the much bulkier products which are currently marketed. The absorbent structures can be made by a process which does not involve water or another solvent. The process therefore does not involve the handling of solvents, or drying. The simplicity of the process permits the use of standard equipment as is currently being used for the manufacture of absorbent webs; it is possible to implement the manufacture of the absorbent structures of the present invention without any major capital investments, and at low per unit manufacturing costs. It is

therefore an object of this invention to provide a flexible absorbent structure which comprises a water-insoluble hydrogel, having improved absorbent properties. It is a further object to provide improved disposable absorbent products, such as diapers, which are substantially thinner and less bulky than conventional disposable absorbent products. It is a further object of this invention to provide a process for making such absorbent structures.

RELEVANT REFERENCES

The gel blocking phenomenon has been well documented, and the resulting poor properties of absorbent structures comprising hydrogels have been discussed: see, for example, E. Carus, "First International Absorbent Products Conference Proceedings", November, 1980, Section V-1; and J. H. Field, "Pulp Parameters Affecting Product Performance", TAPPI, 65(7) 1982, pp. 93-97.

Japanese Patent Specification 56-65630, published June 3, 1981, discloses a process for preparing "tufted lumps" of cellulose fiber holding water-insoluble resins. The lumps are prepared by dispersing the fibers and the resin in methanol, wet-laying the mixture and drying off the solvent. The web is subsequently compressed to a density of more than 0.1 g/cm³, preferably about 0.6 g/cm³. The sheet thus obtained is cut into pieces of less than 0.5 g each. A similar approach is taken by Kopolow, U.S. Pat. No. 4,354,901, issued Oct. 19, 1982. This reference discloses a process whereby a slurry is formed of less than about 0.1% by weight solids in water, the solids being a mixture of cellulose fibers and particulate hydro-colloidal material. A wet web is formed from the slurry which is subsequently dried and densified by at least 10%, preferably at least 50%. It is said that the densifying step results in reduction of the stiffness of the absorbent structure (Gurley Stiffness values of less than 40 g).

SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

This invention relates to a flexible, substantially unbonded, absorbent structure comprising a mixture of hydrophilic fibers and discrete particles of a water-insoluble hydrogel, in a fiber/hydrogel ratio of from about 30:70 to about 98:2; said absorbent structure having a density of from about 0.15 to about 1 g/cm³.

This invention further relates to a process for making a flexible absorbent structure, comprising the following steps: (a) air-laying a dry mixture of hydrophilic fibers and particles of a water-insoluble hydrogel in a fiber/hydrogel weight ratio of from about 30:70 to about 98:2 into a web; and (b) compressing the web to a density of from about 0.15 to about 1 g/cm³.

BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWING

The drawing schematically illustrates one embodiment of the process for preparing the absorbent structures of the present invention.

DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF THE INVENTION

The basis of this invention is the discovery that mixtures of hydrophilic fibers and particles of water-insoluble hydrogels may be formed into flexible, highly absorbent structures, provided that the weight ratio of fiber/hydrogel is between about 30:70 to about 98:2; and further provided that the structure is densified to a density of from about 0.15 to about 1 g/cm³. The absor-

bent structures of the present invention are basically webs of hydrophilic fibers, having dispersed therein discrete particles of the water-insoluble hydrogel. The hydrogel particles may be randomly dispersed, or in a pattern of areas with a low fiber/hydrogel ratio, and areas of a high fiber/hydrogel ratio (which includes areas of fiber alone).

By "substantially unbonded" is meant that the number of fiber/fiber bonds, fiber/hydrogel particle bonds and hydrogel particle/hydrogel particle bonds is kept as low as reasonably possible. Bonds which may occur include hydrogen bonds (like paper-making bonds), other types of chemical bonds as may occur between fibers and hydrogel particles, among hydrogel particles, and among certain types of fibers (e.g. thermoplastic fibers) and mechanical bonds. This is important because the high absorbent capacities of the absorbent structures of the present invention are due to a significant extent to their ability to quickly regain volume upon initial wetting. A large number of bonds among the constituents of the structure would seriously impair this ability.

It is virtually impossible to entirely prevent bonds from being formed. However, some modest degree of bonding does not appear to negatively affect the structures' ability to quickly regain volume upon initial wetting. Generally, the degree of bonding is minimized by avoiding exposure of the fibers and hydrogel particles, or the absorbent structures, to water in its liquid form, and by avoiding prolonged exposure to air which has a high relative humidity. These process parameters are discussed in more detail hereinbelow.

By "hydrogel" as used herein is meant an inorganic or organic compound capable of absorbing aqueous fluids and retaining them under moderate pressures. For good results, the hydrogels must be water insoluble. Examples are inorganic materials such as silica gels and organic compounds such as cross-linked polymers. Cross-linking may be by covalent, ionic, vander Waals, or hydrogen bonding. Examples of polymers include polyacrylamides, polyvinyl alcohol, ethylene maleic anhydride copolymers, polyvinyl ethers, hydroxypropyl cellulose, carboxymethyl cellulose, polyvinyl morpholinone, polymers and copolymers of vinyl sulfonic acid, polyacrylates, polyacrylamides, polyvinyl pyridine and the like. Other suitable hydrogels are those disclosed in U.S. Pat. No. 3,901,236, issued to Assarsson et al., Aug. 26, 1975, the disclosures of which are incorporated herein by reference. Particularly preferred polymers for use herein are hydrolyzed acrylonitrile grafted starch, acrylic acid grafted starch, polyacrylates, and isobutylene maleic anhydride copolymers, or mixtures thereof.

Processes for preparing hydrogels are disclosed in U.S. Pat. No. 4,076,663, issued Feb. 28, 1978 to Fusayoshi Masuda et al.; in U.S. Pat. No. 4,286,082, issued Aug. 25, 1981 to Tsuno Tsubakimoto et al.; and further in U.S. Pat. Nos. 3,734,876, 3,661,815, 3,670,731, 3,664,343, 3,783,871, and Belgian Pat. No. 785,858; the disclosures of all of which are incorporated herein by reference.

As used herein "Particles" include particles of any shape, e.g. spherical or semi-spherical, cubic, rod-like, polyhedral, etc.; but also shapes having a large greatest dimension/smallest dimension ratio, like needles, flakes and fibers, are contemplated for use herein. By "particle size" as used herein is meant the weight average of the smallest dimension of the individual particles. Conglomerates of hydrogel particles may also be used, pro-

vided the weight average size of such conglomerates is within the limits set forth hereinbelow.

Although the absorbent structures of the present invention are expected to perform well with hydrogel particles having a particle size varying over a wide range, other considerations may preclude the use of very small or very large particles. For reasons of industrial hygiene, (weight) average particle sizes smaller than about 30 microns are less desirable. Particles having a smallest dimension larger than about 4 mm may cause a feeling of grittiness in the absorbent structure, which is undesirable from a consumer standpoint. Preferred for use herein are particles having an (weight) average particle size of from about 50 microns to about 1 mm.

The type of hydrophilic fibers is not critical for use in the present invention. Any type of hydrophilic fiber which is suitable for use in conventional absorbent products is also suitable for use in the absorbent structure of the present invention. Specific examples include cellulose fibers, rayon, polyester fibers. Other examples of suitable hydrophilic fibers are hydrophilized hydrophobic fibers, like surfactant-treated or silica-treated thermoplastic fibers. Also, fibers which do not provide webs of sufficient absorbent capacity to be useful in conventional absorbent structures, but which do provide good wicking properties, are suitable for use in the absorbent structures of the present invention. This is so because, for the purposes of the present invention, wicking properties of the fibers are far more important than their absorbent capacity. For reasons of availability and cost, cellulose fibers, in particular wood pulp fibers, are preferred.

The relative amount of hydrophilic fibers and hydrogel particles are most conveniently expressed in a weight ratio fiber/hydrogel. These ratios may range from about 30:70 to about 98:2. Low fiber/hydrogel ratios, i.e. from about 30:70 to about 50:50, are practicable only when the hydrogel used possesses a low swelling capacity i.e., hydrogels having an absorbent capacity for urine and other body fluids of less than about 15 times their own weight (15 \times). (Absorbent capacity data are generally available from the manufacturer of the hydrogel; or may conveniently be determined by means of the absorption/desorption test described hereinbelow). Hydrogels which have a very high absorption capacity (i.e. 25 \times , and which consequently exhibit a high degree of swelling after wetting) tend to gel block when used in absorbent structures at low fiber/hydrogel ratios, which causes undesirable, slow, diffusion type absorption kinetics. Very high fiber/hydrogel ratios, e.g. above 95:5 on the other hand, provide meaningful performance benefits only if the hydrogel used has a high absorbent capacity (e.g., 25 \times for urine and other body fluids). For most commercially available hydrogels the optimum fiber/hydrogel ratio is in the range of from about 50:50 to about 95:5.

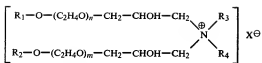
Based on a cost/performance analysis, fiber/hydrogel ratios of from about 75:25 to about 90:10 are preferred. This preference is, of course, based on the relative costs of hydrophilic fibers (e.g. wood pulp fibers) and hydrogel. If, for example, wood pulp prices would go up and/or hydrogel prices would come down, lower fiber/hydrogel ratios would be more cost effective.

The density of the absorbent structure is of critical importance. When hydrogel particles are dispersed into an absorbent web of hydrophilic fibers having a density of about 0.1 g/cm³, the admixture of the hydrogel re-

sults in only a small increase in the amount of fluid which is absorbed within a practically reasonable time (e.g. 10 minutes) because the fluid uptake of such webs is slow. When the absorbent structure is densified to a density of at least about 0.15 g/cm³, a marked increase in absorbent capacity is observed. Moreover, the fluid uptake becomes much faster upon densification. The capacity increase is surprising because densifying the web will result in reducing the void volume of the dry structure. It is believed that densifying the web results in better wicking of fluid into the web, so that more hydrogel particles participate in the absorption process, which results in a higher actual absorbent capacity. It is further believed that a densified web may be more effective in keeping the hydrogel particles isolated from each other. Densifying the web further, from about 0.15 g/cm³ to about 1 g/cm³, results in a reduction in the bulk of the structure (which is desirable from a consumer standpoint, for aesthetics reasons), without loss of absorbent capacity. However, above a density of about 0.6 g/cm³, further densification hardly reduces the bulk further, because of the inverse relationship between bulk and density. The densities of the absorbent structures of the present invention are therefore preferably in the range of from about 0.15 to about 0.6 g/cm³, and more preferably within the range of from about 0.25 to about 0.4 g/cm³.

The continuous flexible absorbent structures of the present invention can be made by a process comprising the steps of (a) air-laying a dry mixture of hydrophilic fibers and particles of a water-insoluble hydrogel in a weight ratio of from about 30:70 to about 98:2; and (b) attaching the web to a density of from about 0.15 to about 1 g/cm³. Step (a) may be accomplished by metering an air flow containing hydrophilic fibers and an air flow containing hydrogel particles onto a wire screen. The fibers and the particles become mixed by turbulence of the two air flows as they meet. Alternatively, the fibers and the hydrogel may be mixed in a separate mixing chamber prior to air-laying.

For the purpose of the present invention it is essential that dry hydrogel particles are used. Also, neither the fibers, the particles nor the mixture of fibers and particles should be exposed to water in its liquid form, or another solvent, at any time during this process or subsequent thereto. When wet hydrogel particles are used, the fibers tend to become entangled and/or bonded with the particles which results in undesirable stiffness of the absorbent structure. Especially when cellulose fibers, e.g. wood pulp fibers, are used as the hydrophilic fibers in the absorbent structures of the present invention, the softness of these structures can be improved by adding small quantities of chemical debonding agents (cationic, nonionic or anionic surfactants) to the fibers. Examples of suitable debonding agents are disclosed in U.S. Pat. No. 3,821,068, issued June 28, 1974 to Shaw, the disclosures of which are incorporated herein by reference. Particularly suitable debonding agents are quaternary ammonium compounds of the type disclosed in U.S. Pat. No. 3,554,862, issued Jan. 12, 1971 to Hervey et al., incorporated herein by reference. Preferred quaternary ammonium compounds are those having the general formula



wherein R_1 and R_2 are hydrocarbyl groups containing from about 8 to about 22 carbon atoms, R_3 and R_4 are alkyl having from 1 to 6 carbon atoms, n and m are integers from 2 to about 10, and X is halogen. Examples of such compounds are disclosed in U.S. Pat. No. 4,144,122, issued Mar. 13, 1979 to Emanuelson et al., incorporated herein by reference.

Typically, the amount of chemical debonding agent in the absorbent structures is from about 0.01% to about 0.5% by weight of the hydrophilic fibers.

As used herein, "dry" does not mean "absolutely water-free". For example, under normal storage and handling conditions, hydrogel particles take up some moisture. The hydrophilic fibers also take up some moisture during storage. Furthermore, it may be desirable to use humidified air for air transport of the fibers and the hydrogel particles, to avoid dusting. Under such process conditions, the hydrogel particles and the fibers will take up even more moisture, but this does not negatively affect the practice of the present invention. However, contact times of the hydrogel with conveying air are short, and the limited water-uptake by the hydrogel during air-conveying with humidified air will not result in substantial bonding of the structure. The important criterion is that the hydrogel particles should not be allowed to swell appreciably, and should not develop a surface stickiness to a point that it results in entanglement and/or bonding of the fibers. Generally, this can be achieved by exposing the hydrophilic fibers and the hydrogel particles only to water vapor, and not to water in its liquid form. Even mere exposure of the hydrogel to humidified air may result in substantial bonding of the structure during subsequent processing, especially during calendaring, if such exposure is prolonged. For example, in U.S. Pat. No. 4,252,761, issued Feb. 24, 1981 to Schoggen et al., the entire thrust is to expose specific hydrogel materials to levels of water which result in bonded structures which are unacceptable for the purpose of the present invention due to unacceptable initial absorption kinetics. In order to ensure that the structure remains substantially unbonded the moisture content of the absorbent structure must be less than about 10% by weight of the dry absorbent structure.

The absorbent structures may conveniently be made by using conventional equipment designed for air laying of hydrophilic fibrous webs. In such equipment, webs are typically formed by taking up hydrophilic fibers in an air flow and depositing the fibers on a wire mesh screen. By metering the desired quantities of hydrogel particles into the air flow at a point just upstream of the wire mesh screen, the desired mixture of hydrophilic fibers and hydrogel particles can be made. The web formed on the screen is then passed through calender rolls which are set to a nip pressure resulting in the desired density of the absorbent structure. It will be clear that this embodiment of the process requires only minor modifications of conventional equipment for the manufacture of absorbent structures, i.e. installing a metering device for the addition of the hydrogel particles. In certain instances it may be necessary to replace

the standard wire mesh screen on the equipment with one of a finer mesh size. This need will arise when relatively small hydrogel particles are used, and/or when the mesh size of the standard screen is relatively coarse.

The process of preparing the absorbent structures of the present invention is illustrated by the drawing. In this process sheets of dry lap 101 are fed to a hammer mill 102 wherein the dry lap is disintegrated into cellulose fibers. Such fibers are blown from the hammer mill using air entering through conduit 103. Particles of hydrogel 104 are fed to the system from a hydrogel feed hopper 105 via conduit 106. The mixture 107 of cellulose fibers and hydrogel particles is removed from the hammer mill via conduit 108 and propelled through conduit 109 by an airstream. An intimate admixture of the fibers and hydrogel particles is formed in the conduit 109.

The mixture 107 of cellulose fibers and hydrogel particles is deposited on the screen surface 110 of a forming drum 111, the inside of which is maintained under vacuum. The mixture of cellulose fibers and hydrogel particles intermittently deposited on the screen forms discrete fiber webs 112 on the surface of the forming drum. These webs 112 are removed from the forming drum and deposited onto a transfer screen 113. The webs 112 on the transfer screen then pass between upper and lower calender rolls 114 and 115 which serve to compress the webs 112 to the desired density, thereby forming the absorbent structures of the present invention.

Because of their particular properties, the absorbent structures of this invention are extremely suitable for use in disposable absorbent products. By "absorbent product" herein is meant a consumer product which is capable of absorbing significant quantities of water and other fluids, like body fluids. Examples of absorbent products include disposable diapers, sanitary napkins, incontinence pads, paper towels, facial tissues, and the like. As compared to conventional hydrophilic fibrous webs, the absorbent structures of this invention have a high absorbent capacity, a high density, and a flexibility which is at least equal to that of conventional fibrous webs. For these reasons, these absorbent structures are particularly suitable for use in products like diapers, incontinent pads, and sanitary napkins. The high absorbent capacity and the high density make it possible to design absorbent products which are thin and yet have more than sufficient absorbent capacity to avoid the embarrassment of failure. Flexibility of the structure ensures comfort for the wearer and a good fit of the absorbent product. The high density/low volume of the products will also result in important packaging and transport cost savings for the manufacturer.

Disposable diapers comprising the absorbent structures of the present invention may be made by using conventional diaper making techniques, but replacing the wood pulp fiber web ("air-felt") core which is typically used in conventional diapers with an absorbent structure of the present invention. Thus, a disposable diaper may be comprised of (from top to bottom) a top sheet (a non-woven, hydrophobic tissue, e.g. needle punched polyester), the absorbent structure, and a water-proof, pliable back sheet (e.g. hard polyethylene, having an embossed caliper of approximately 2.3 mils.). Optionally, the absorbent structure may be wrapped in envelope tissue (wet strength tissue paper). Disposable diapers of this type are disclosed in more detail in U.S.

Pat. No. 3,952,745, issued Apr. 27, 1976 to Duncan; and in U.S. Pat. No. 3,860,003, issued Jan. 14, 1975 to Buell, the disclosures of which are incorporated herein by reference.

Since the absorbent structures of the present invention have a higher absorbent capacity than conventional wood pulp fiber webs, the wood pulp web may be replaced with an absorbent structure of the present invention of less than equal weight. The reduced weight and the higher density combined account for a reduction in bulk by a factor 3 to 12 or more (depending on the type of hydrogel, the fiber/hydrogel ratio, and the density used).

The amount of absorbent structure used in disposable diapers is conveniently expressed as the basis weight (in g/cm²) of the structure. Typically, basis weights of the absorbent structures of the present invention as used in disposable diapers range from about 0.01 g/cm² to about 0.05 g/cm². One way in which this invention may be used is in manufacturing diapers having both increased absorption capacity and reduced bulk as compared to conventional diapers. This can be obtained by using absorbent structures having a basis weight of from about 0.018 to about 0.03 g/cm². Preferred are basis weights of from about 0.019 to about 0.021 g/cm². A different approach is to aim at an absorbent capacity substantially equivalent to that of conventional diapers, while fully exploiting the potential of bulk reduction offered by this invention. This is generally achieved by using basis weights of from about 0.01 to about 0.017 g/cm². Preferred are basis weights in the range from about 0.014 to about 0.017. The absorbent structures used in disposable diapers preferably have a thickness of from about 0.3 mm to about 2 mm, more preferably from about 0.5 mm to about 1 mm.

Conventional disposable diapers are usually comprised of (from top to bottom) a top sheet (a non-woven, hydrophobic tissue, e.g., needle punched polyester), a wood pulp fiber absorbent core, and a waterproof, pliable back sheet (e.g., hard polyethylene having an embossed caliper of approximately 2.3 mils.). The absorbent capacity of such diapers is substantially increased when an absorbent structure of the present invention is placed between the wood pulp fiber core and the back sheet. When used in this manner the absorbent structures preferably have a thickness of from about 0.1 mm to about 1 mm. The absorbent structure used as an insert can have the same size and shape as the wood pulp fiber core, or be different. In a specific embodiment the wood pulp fiber core is hourglass shaped (i.e., the width in the center of the core is substantially less than the width at the ends), and the absorbent structure is rectangular, having a length approximately the same as the length of the wood pulp fiber core, and a width of from about 1 cm to about 5 cm less than the width of the wood pulp fiber core at the narrowest point of the hourglass.

Because the absorbent structures of the present invention are highly absorbent, and yet thin and flexible, they are extremely suitable for use in sanitary napkins. As is the case with disposable diapers, sanitary napkins utilizing the present absorbent structures may be derived from conventional sanitary napkins by simply replacing the absorbent core thereof (typically a web of wood pulp fibers) with an absorbent structure of the present invention. Such replacement may be on a weight-by-weight basis, which results in a reduction in volume and a gain in capacity; or the replacement may be on a less than equal weight basis, thereby sacrificing part of the

gain in absorbent capacity in favor of an even greater reduction in bulk. The absorbent structures used in sanitary napkins preferably have a thickness of from about 0.1 mm to about 2 mm, more preferably from about 0.3 mm to about 1 mm.

An example of a sanitary napkin comprises a pad of the absorbent structure of the present invention; a hydrophobic topsheet; and a fluid impervious bottom sheet. The topsheet and the backsheet are placed at opposite sides of the absorbent structure. Optionally, the absorbent structure is wrapped in envelope tissue. Suitable materials for top sheets, bottom sheet and envelope tissue are well known in the art. A more detailed description of sanitary napkins and suitable materials for use therein is found in U.S. Pat. No. 3,871,378, issued Mar. 18, 1975 to Duncan et al., the disclosures of which are incorporated herein by reference.

PERFORMANCE TESTING

A. Partitioning Test

Samples of absorbent structures were subjected to a partitioning test, more fully described hereinbelow. This test has been designed to measure the absorption performance of absorbent structures in competition with conventional cellulose fibrous webs, both under conditions of low liquid load and high liquid loads. The absorption fluid was "synthetic urine" (a solution of 1% NaCl, in distilled water; the surface tension of the solution was adjusted to 45 dynes/cm with about 0.0025% of an octylphenoxy polyethoxy ethanol surfactant (Triton X-100, from Rohm and Haas Co.)). This test has been found to be predictive of the absorption capacity under typical usage conditions of absorbent structures when used as absorbent cores in diapers.

Absorbent structures were made by metering predetermined amounts of hydrogel particles into a flow of air containing southern soft wood slash pine fibers; the mixture was air laid on a wire mesh screen and the resulting web was densified between calendar rolls to the required density. The structures had a basis weight of 0.04 g/cm². On the same equipment, webs of southern soft wood slash pine fibers were made, also having a basis weight of 0.04 g/cm² and calendared to a density of 0.1 g/cm³. No hydrogel particles were added to the latter webs. The latter web served as the reference in all tests. Round samples of 6 cm diameter were punched out of the sheets of absorbent material for partitioning testing.

The partitioning tests were carried out as follows. A piece of polyethylene sheet (the kind of material generally used as a backsheet in disposable diapers) was placed on a flat, nonabsorbent surface. A round sample (6 cm diameter) of the absorbent structure to be tested was placed on top of this backsheet. On top of that was placed a piece of paper tissue of the type generally used as envelope tissue in disposable diapers. On top of the envelope tissue was placed a sample of the reference material (southern soft wood slash pine fibrous web, 0.1 g/cm³ density). The top sample was wetted with a predetermined amount (about 1 g) of synthetic urine, covered with another piece of backsheet, upon which a weight of 4.4 pounds (about 2 kg) was placed. This weight exerts a confining pressure of 1 psi (about 70×10^3 N/m²). After five minutes equilibration time, the weight was removed and the two samples of absorbent material were weighed separately. The "loading", defined as the amount of synthetic urine (in grams)

absorbed per gram of absorbent material was calculated for each sample. The sample was then dosed with an additional dose of synthetic urine, placed back under the confining weight, equilibrated, and weighed. This was repeated several times (typically on the order of 8-10 times) so that the relative absorption performance of the test material over a wide range of total loadings was obtained. The loading of the bottom test layer was then plotted as a function of the loading in the reference top layer.

Of particular interest are the loadings of the test layer at the points where the loading of the reference is 2.0 g/g and 4.5 g/g respectively. The loading of the test layer at the reference loading of 4.5 g/g has been found to be predictive of the loading at failure in normal use when the test material is used as a core in a disposable diaper. The loading of the test layer at a loading of the reference layer of 2.0 g/g is representative of the loading of the diaper under typical usage conditions. All experimental results reported herein are average results of duplicate or triplicate experiments.

B. Absorption/Desorption Test

The absorption properties of absorbent structures were determined by their "synthetic urine" absorption and desorption behavior. The basis procedure and the design of the apparatus are described by Burgeni and Kapur, "Capillary Sorption Equilibria in Fiber Masses", *Textile Research Journal*, 37 (1967) 362, which publication is incorporated herein by reference. The test is particularly useful for determining absorption kinetics.

The absorption apparatus consisted of a horizontal capillary tube, approximately 120 cm long, connected by a valve to a fluid reservoir. The end of the tube was connected by tygon tubing to a glass funnel containing an ASTM 4-8 micron frit on which the absorbent web sample was placed. The glass frit funnel was mounted on a vertical pole. The height of the frit above the capillary tube determined the hydrostatic suction being exerted on the sample. In a typical absorption/desorption experiment the volume of absorbed synthetic urine was determined as a function of hydrostatic suction, starting at 100 cm (corresponding with a hydrostatic pressure of -100 cm).

A simplified test was developed to determine the useful capacity of an absorbent web. In this test, the absorbed volume at -25 cm hydrostatic pressure was measured ("25 cm, absorption"). Next, the frit containing the sample was lowered to zero hydrostatic pressure and the equilibrium value of sorbed volume measured ("0 cm, void volume"). Then the frit was raised again to the 25 cm mark and the absorbed volume at -25 cm in the desorption mode was determined ("25 cm, desorption").

C. Gurley Stiffness Test

The stiffness of absorbent structures was determined using a Gurley Stiffness Tester (manufactured by W. and L. E. Gurley of Troy, New York). The use of this tester is disclosed in U.S. Pat. No. 4,354,901, issued Oct. 19, 1982 to Kopolow, which disclosure is incorporated herein by reference. In essence, this instrument measures the externally applied force required to produce a given deflection of a strip of material of specific dimensions, fixed at one end and having a load applied to the other end. The results were obtained as "Gurley Stiffness" values in units of grams. Each strip of absorbent

material was 3.5 inches by one inch (about 8.9 cm x 2.5 cm).

The absorbent structures of the present invention have a Gurley Stiffness value of less than 2 g, preferably less than about 1 g, when measured on a strip having a basis weight of 0.03 g/cm².

EXAMPLE I

In order to test the effect of fiber:hydrogel ratios on the partitioning performance of absorbent structures, the following absorbent structures were prepared.

Southern soft wood slash pine fibers were dry mixed with an acrylic acid grafted starch hydrogel having a weight average particle size of about 250 microns ("Sanwet IM 1000", from Sanyo Co., Ltd., Japan) in fiber:hydrogel ratios of 100:0 (no hydrogel), 95:5, 90:10, 85:15, and 80:20. Webs having dimensions of 41 x 30 cm, and having a basis weight of 390 g/m², were prepared in a batch type air laying equipment. The webs were compressed to a dry density of 0.3 g/cm³, using a flat hydraulic press, corresponding to a thickness of 1.3 mm.

Samples of these webs were subjected to the above-described partitioning test. The following results were obtained:

TABLE I

Partitioning performance of absorbent structures as a function of fiber:hydrogel ratio.

Fiber:Hydrogel Ratio	Loading (g/g) at Reference = 2.0 g/g	Loading (g/g) at Reference = 4.5 g/g
100:0	2.0	3.6
95:5	2.4	4.5
90:10	3.4	5.9
85:15	3.7	6.5
80:20	4.0	7.2

TABLE II

Absorption/desorption data¹ as a function of fiber:hydrogel ratio.

Fiber:Hydrogel Ratio	25 cm Absorption	0 cm Void	25 cm Desorption
100:0	2.5	3.0	2.9
95:5	2.9	3.8	3.5
90:10	3.8	4.9	4.5
85:15	4.3	5.9	5.3
80:20	4.8	6.2	5.8

¹in ml/g, after 10 min. equilibration time

The data demonstrate the dramatic increase in absorption capacities over a wide range of conditions which is obtained by the absorbent structures of the present invention, as compared to all-fiber structures of the same density.

EXAMPLE II

For comparison, absorbent structures were prepared, using the wet-laying process described in U.S. Pat. No. 4,354,901 (issued Oct. 19, 1982 to Kopolow) as follows:

A mixture of southern slash pine wood pulp fibers and an acrylic acid grafted starch hydrogel material (Sanwet IM 1000, from Sanyo Co., Ltd., Japan) (fiber:hydrogel ratio=80:20) was slurried in water at a consistency of 0.7%. A web was formed by straining the slurry on a wire mesh screen. The amount of slurry was such as to result in a basis weight of 0.034 g/cm². The web was dried in an oven at 100° C. The density of the dried web was about 0.2 g/cm³. The web was then compressed in a hydraulic press to a density of 0.38 g/cm³. The resulting structure was stiff and board-like.

The absorption performance of this sample was determined with the above-described partitioning test. The results are compared with those obtained with an air-laid structure prepared according to the process of the present invention. (Table III)

TABLE III

Partitioning performance of absorbent structures as affected by the process of making.

Fiber:Hydrogel Ratio ¹	Process	Loading (g/g) at Ref. = 2.0 g/g		Loading (g/g) at Ref. = 4.5 g/g	
		Ref.	Ref.	Ref.	Ref.
80:20	Air-laying ²	4.0	7.2		
80:20	Wet-laying ³	3.4	4.5		

¹density of both structures was 0.3 g/cm³

²according to the process of the present invention

³process as described in U.S. Pat. No. 4,354,901

The data demonstrate that the process of the present invention results in absorbent structures having absorbent properties which are far superior to those made by a wet-laying process.

EXAMPLE III

The following structures were prepared using the above-described air-laying technique: an all-fiber (southern slash pine) web, density 0.1 g/cm³ (sample A); an all-fiber (southern slash pine) web, density 0.3 g/cm³ (sample B); a fiber (southern slash pine)/hydrogel structure (fiber:hydrogel ratio=80:20), density 0.3 g/cm³ (sample C). The hydrogel was the same as used in Examples I and II. All structures were soft and flexible.

The partitioning performance of these samples was determined using the above described partitioning test, except that equilibration times were one minute.

TABLE IV

Partitioning Performance of Various Absorbent Structures

Sample #	Loading (g/g) at Reference = 2.0 g/g		Loading (g/g) at Reference = 4.5 g/g	
	Ref.	Ref.	Ref.	Ref.
A	1.1	4.4		
B	2.1	3.9		
C*	3.4	7.1		

*structure according to the present invention

The partitioning data illustrate that densifying an all-fiber structure (A-B) results in a higher partitioning capacity at low loading (due to better wicking), but a lower capacity at high loading (due to reduce void volume). An 80:20 fiber:hydrogel mixture at high density (0.3 g/cm³, sample C) possesses vastly superior partitioning properties, both at low and at high loadings.

EXAMPLE IV

Absorbent structures containing different types of hydrogel were made by in-line metering of dry hydrogel particles into a flow of southern softwood slash pine fibers. All hydrogel samples had a weight average particle size in the range of from 100 microns to 1 mm. The mixture were formed into sheets, basis weight of about 0.035 g/cm², on a wire screen. The sheets were compressed to a dry density of 0.3 g/cm³.

The partitioning performance of each sheet was tested with the above-described partitioning test. The results are collected in Table V.

TABLE V

Type of Hydrogel	Fiber:Hydrogel Ratio	Loading at Ref. = 2.0 g/g	Loading at Ref. = 4.5 g/g
None (control)	100:0	2.05	3.60
Starch, acrylonitrile ¹	81.2:18.8	3.45	5.35
Starch, acrylonitrile ²	84.6:15.4	2.30	5.40
Polyacrylate ³	75:25:0.5	5.75	8.65
Polyacrylate ⁴	80.8:19.2	5.10	8.10
Starch, acrylonitrile ⁵	82.7:17.3	4.25	6.10
Starch, acrylonitrile ⁶	78.7:21.3	4.25	6.10
Starch, acrylonitrile ⁷	82.6:17.4	4.00	5.40
Cellulose, carboxy ⁸	86:0:14.0	2.95	5.14
Cellulose, carboxy ⁹	77.9:22.1	3.20	5.40
Starch, carboxy ¹⁰	82.1:17.9	2.20	4.40
Starch, acrylic acid ¹¹	80.1:19.9	3.55	7.00
Starch, acrylic acid ¹²	77.7:22.3	4.40	7.40
Isobutylene/maleic anhydride copolymer ¹³	77.6:22.4	4.25	7.75
Isobutylene/maleic anhydride copolymer ¹⁴	90.0:20.0	4.25	7.45

¹A-100, from Grain Processing

²A-200, from Grain Processing

³J-550, from Grain Processing

⁴SGP 147, from Henkel, U.S.A.

⁵SGP 505B, from Henkel, U.S.A.

⁶Akucel 1019, from Enka, Germany

⁷Fosorb 15, from Avebe, France

⁸Sauvex IM 1000, from Saunjo, Japan

⁹KI Gel 201, from Kuraray, Japan

¹⁰

¹¹

¹²

¹³

¹⁴

¹⁵

¹⁶

¹⁷

¹⁸

¹⁹

²⁰

²¹

²²

²³

²⁴

²⁵

²⁶

²⁷

²⁸

²⁹

³⁰

³¹

³²

³³

³⁴

³⁵

³⁶

³⁷

³⁸

³⁹

⁴⁰

⁴¹

⁴²

⁴³

⁴⁴

⁴⁵

⁴⁶

⁴⁷

⁴⁸

⁴⁹

⁵⁰

⁵¹

⁵²

⁵³

⁵⁴

⁵⁵

⁵⁶

⁵⁷

⁵⁸

⁵⁹

⁶⁰

⁶¹

⁶²

⁶³

⁶⁴

⁶⁵

⁶⁶

⁶⁷

⁶⁸

⁶⁹

⁷⁰

⁷¹

⁷²

⁷³

⁷⁴

⁷⁵

⁷⁶

⁷⁷

⁷⁸

⁷⁹

⁸⁰

⁸¹

⁸²

⁸³

⁸⁴

⁸⁵

⁸⁶

⁸⁷

⁸⁸

⁸⁹

⁹⁰

⁹¹

⁹²

⁹³

⁹⁴

⁹⁵

⁹⁶

⁹⁷

⁹⁸

⁹⁹

¹⁰⁰

¹⁰¹

¹⁰²

¹⁰³

¹⁰⁴

¹⁰⁵

¹⁰⁶

¹⁰⁷

¹⁰⁸

¹⁰⁹

¹¹⁰

¹¹¹

¹¹²

¹¹³

¹¹⁴

¹¹⁵

¹¹⁶

¹¹⁷

¹¹⁸

¹¹⁹

¹²⁰

¹²¹

¹²²

¹²³

¹²⁴

¹²⁵

¹²⁶

¹²⁷

¹²⁸

¹²⁹

¹³⁰

¹³¹

¹³²

¹³³

¹³⁴

¹³⁵

¹³⁶

¹³⁷

¹³⁸

¹³⁹

¹⁴⁰

¹⁴¹

¹⁴²

¹⁴³

¹⁴⁴

¹⁴⁵

¹⁴⁶

¹⁴⁷

¹⁴⁸

¹⁴⁹

¹⁵⁰

¹⁵¹

¹⁵²

¹⁵³

¹⁵⁴

¹⁵⁵

¹⁵⁶

¹⁵⁷

¹⁵⁸

¹⁵⁹

¹⁶⁰

¹⁶¹

¹⁶²

¹⁶³

¹⁶⁴

¹⁶⁵

¹⁶⁶

¹⁶⁷

¹⁶⁸

¹⁶⁹

¹⁷⁰

¹⁷¹

¹⁷²

¹⁷³

¹⁷⁴

¹⁷⁵

¹⁷⁶

¹⁷⁷

¹⁷⁸

¹⁷⁹

¹⁸⁰

¹⁸¹

¹⁸²

¹⁸³

¹⁸⁴

¹⁸⁵

¹⁸⁶

¹⁸⁷

¹⁸⁸

¹⁸⁹

¹⁹⁰

¹⁹¹

¹⁹²

¹⁹³

¹⁹⁴

¹⁹⁵

¹⁹⁶

¹⁹⁷

¹⁹⁸

¹⁹⁹

²⁰⁰

²⁰¹

²⁰²

²⁰³

²⁰⁴

²⁰⁵

²⁰⁶

²⁰⁷

²⁰⁸

²⁰⁹

²¹⁰

²¹¹

²¹²

²¹³

²¹⁴

TABLE VI-continued

Time (min.)	Absorption kinetics; hydrostatic pressure—25 cm; absorption mode			
	Absorption (ml/g) Fiber/hydrogel ratio (g/g)			
10	2.8	4.2	5.8	4.6
30	2.8	4.4	6.4	5.9
60	—	4.5	6.6	7.0
360	—	4.6	7.0	9.8
720	—	—	7.2	11.0

The data indicate that the equilibrium absorption capacity increases with increasing amounts of hydrogel. The data also demonstrate, however, that the rate at which the equilibrium absorption capacity is approached becomes progressively slower with increasing amounts of hydrogel.

The optimum fiber/hydrogel ratio for this specific fiber-hydrogel system under these testing conditions appears to be around 75:25.

A similar picture is obtained with 0 cm-void volume absorption kinetics, but there are interesting differences (Table VII). Since under these test conditions the wicking properties are less important, the relative performance of the absorbent structures is to a larger extent determined by the equilibrium absorption capacities of these structures. Still, a structure which has very poor absorption kinetics (i.e., fiber/hydrogel ratio of 40:60) is deficient at times 60 min. as compared to 61:39 and 53:47 fiber/hydrogel samples even under 0 cm hydrostatic pressure conditions.

TABLE VII

Time (min.)	Absorption kinetics; hydrostatic pressure 0 cm			
	Absorption (ml/g) Fiber/hydrogel ratio (g/g)			
100:0	88:12	78:22	61:39	53:47
5	4.2	5.9	6.8	7.7
10	4.2	6.3	7.5	8.8
30	4.2	6.5	8.3	10.2
60	—	6.6	8.5	10.7
360	—	6.8	8.9	11.7

It is expected that, when similar samples are prepared with southern softwood Kraft pulp fibers and a hydrogel which has a saturation capacity for "synthetic urine" of about 10 \times , the absorption capacities will be lower for each fiber/hydrogel ratio than those given in Table VII. However, for these mixtures, a fiber/hydrogel ratio of 40:60 is expected to perform better than a fiber/hydrogel ratio of 50:50 at 5 and 10 min. equilibration times, contrary to the picture obtained with the above hydrogel having a saturation capacity of 25 \times .

EXAMPLE VI

Absorbent structures were made according to the process of the present invention, as described in Example I. The fiber/hydrogel weight ratio was 80:20. The Gurley Stiffness values of these structures were determined. For comparison, the Gurley Stiffness values of structures made according to the wet-laying process described in U.S. Pat. No. 4,354,901 (see Example II) were determined before and after densification. (Table VIII)

TABLE VIII

Sample	Density (g/cm ³)	Basis Weight (g/cm ²)	Gurley Stiffness (g)
Wet-laid	0.1	0.037	24.4

TABLE VIII-continued

Sample	Density (g/cm ³)	Basis Weight (g/cm ²)	Gurley Stiffness (g)
Wet-laid	0.1	0.037	27.2
Wet-laid	0.3	0.033	5.4
Wet-laid	0.3	0.033	3.8
Air-laid	0.3	0.032	0.24
Air-laid	0.3	0.032	0.25
Air-laid	0.3	0.035	0.64
Air-laid	0.3	0.035	0.56

The data confirm that the Gurley Stiffness value of a wet-laid structure, which is initially very high, may be reduced by compressing the structure to a higher density, as is disclosed in U.S. Pat. No. 4,354,901. The data further show that the Gurley Stiffness values of the air-laid structures of the present invention are an order of magnitude lower than those of compressed wet-laid structures, and up to 2 orders of magnitude lower than those of uncompressed wet-laid structures.

EXAMPLE VII

A disposable diaper utilizing an absorbent structure according to this invention was prepared as follows:

An absorbent structure prepared as in Example I was calendered to a caliper of about 0.1 cm and a density of about 0.3 g/cm³ as measured under a confining pressure of 0.1 PSI (about 7 \times 10³N/m²). The web was cut into pads of 12 in. \times 16 in. (about 30 \times 40 cm). The pads were enveloped in wet strength tissue paper having a basis weight of about 12 pounds per 3,000 square feet (about 20 g/m²), a dry tensile strength of about 700 g/inch in the machine direction and about 300 g/inch in the cross machine direction.

The enveloped pad was glued onto a 13 in. \times 17 in. (about 33 cm \times 43 cm) backsheet of embossed polyethylene film having a melt index of about 3 and a density of about 0.92 g/cm³. The ends of the backsheet were folded over the enveloped pad and attached with glue. Finally, the absorbent pad was covered with a topsheet of a hydrophobic but water and urine pervious material. (Webline No. F 6211 from the Kendall Co. of Walpole, Mass., comprised of a non-woven rayon bonded with an acrylic latex).

The diapers had superior water and synthetic urine absorption, wicking and containment characteristics.

EXAMPLE VIII

Sanitary napkins employing an absorbent structure pursuant to this invention are prepared as follows:

An absorbent structure, prepared as in Example I, is calendered to a caliper of about 0.07 cm and a density of about 0.4 g/cm³ as measured under a confining pressure of 0.1 PSI (about 7 \times 10³N/m²). The web is cut into a pad of 8 in. \times 2 in. (about 20 cm \times 5 cm) with tapered ends. On top of this pad is placed a second pad (rectangular) of 5 in. \times 2 in. (about 13 cm \times 5 cm). The combined pad structure is placed against a waterproof backing sheet (8 in. \times 2 in., tapered) of embossed hard polyethylene having an embossed caliper of 2.3 mils. The structure is covered with a top sheet of non-woven, 3 denier needle punched polyester fabric having a density of about 0.03 g/cm³ and a caliper of about 2.3 mm. The thus covered structure is placed on a 9 in. \times 3 in. (about 23 cm \times 7.5 cm) bottom sheet of hydrophobic, spinbonded non-woven polyester having a measured weight of about 15 g/m². The bottom sheet is prefolded upwardly by means of heat and pressure which bonds the

superposed sheets together. The resulting absorbent structure is useful as a sanitary napkin and has superior properties of absorption and containment of menses exudate.

EXAMPLE IX

Diapers containing the absorbent structures of the present invention were made as described in Example VII. Control diapers of the same design were made, using wood pulp fiber webs of 0.1 g/cm² density instead of the absorbent structures of 0.3 g/cm² density.

The diapers were worn by normal infants. The infants were allowed to play in a nursery school setting during the test. The diapers were left on the infants until leakage occurred. In order to speed up the test, the diapers were pre-loaded with a predetermined amount of synthetic urine.

After leakage occurred, the diapers were taken off and weighed to determine the amount of absorbed fluid. The loading X, defined as the amount of fluid (in grams) absorbed at the point that failure occurred per gram of absorbent material, was calculated. The results are presented in Table IX.

The absorbent core of conventional diapers (samples A, G and I) contain about 5 times their own weight of fluid at the point of leakage. The absorbent structures of the present invention contain from 8.0 to 12.7 times their own weight of fluid at the point where leakage occurs. The data further show that the present invention makes it possible to reduce the volume of a diaper core by a factor 7 (as compared to conventional airlaid diaper cores) while maintaining the absorption capacity of the diaper (compare sample J with samples A, G and I).

TABLE IX

SAMPLE	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J
Absorbent Core (g)	(35.6)	(25.0)	(25.0)	(25.0)	(18.0)	(21.0)	(35.6)	(18.0)	(35.6)	(15.0)
Fiber (g)	34.9	19.7	20.6	19.8	14.8	17.7	35.6	15.3	35.6	12.3
Hydrogel (g)	—	4.9	4.5	4.3	3.3	3.1	—	3.3	—	2.7
Tissue (g)	6.0	6.0	6.0	6.0	6.0	6.0	6.0	6.0	6.0	6.0
Total absorbent mat.	40.9	30.6	31.1	30.1	24.1	26.8	41.6	24.6	41.6	21.0
Fiber/hydrogel ratio	—	80/20	82/18	82/18	82/18	85/15	—	82/18	—	82/18
Grams of fluid to grade 3 leakage	194	238	263	208	245	244	179	230	181	183
Total Abs. X to leak Core (less tissue) X to failure (g/g)	4.7	7.8	8.4	6.9	10.2	9.1	4.3	9.4	4.4	8.7
Core thickness (mm)	2.9	0.7	0.7	0.7	0.5	0.6	2.9	0.5	2.9	0.4
Core basis weight (mg/cm ²)	29	20	20	20	15	17	29	15	29	12

Alternatively, one may reduce the bulk of the diaper core by less than a factor 7, (e.g., by a factor 4, samples B, C and D; by a factor 5; sample F; or by a factor 6, samples E and H) and yet achieve a substantial gain in absorbent capacity as compared to conventional disposable diapers.

EXAMPLE X

A diaper is prepared as described in U.S. Pat. No. 3,860,003, Buell, issued Jan. 14, 1975, incorporated herein by reference, except that, in addition to the absorbent body disclosed therein (e.g., made from air-laid wood pulp) there is inserted between said absorbent body and the backsheet an hourglass-shaped absorbent structure of the present invention. The absorbent structure is made as described in Example I. The basis weight is 0.035 g/cm²; the density is 0.3 g/cm³, resulting in a thickness of 1.17 mm.

EXAMPLE XI

Diapers were prepared as described in U.S. Pat. No. 3,860,003, Buell, issued Jan. 14, 1975, incorporated herein by reference. The hourglass-shaped softwood pulp cores had the following dimensions: length: 15.5 in. (about 40 cm), width at the ears: 10.5 in. (about 27 cm), and width in the center: 3.75 in. (about 9.5 cm).

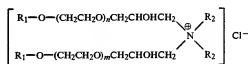
Absorbent structures of the present invention were made with softwood fibers and acrylic acid grafted starch hydrogel having a weight average particle size of about 25 microns ("Sanwet 1M 1000", from Sanjo Co., Japan) in a fiber:hydrogel ratio of 85:15, using the process of Example I. The absorbent structures had a basis weight of 0.12 g/in. (0.019 g/cm²) and a caliper of 0.03 in. (0.076 cm), which corresponds to a density of 0.25 g/cm³. The structures were covered with a sheet of envelope tissue, and cut to a size of 3.5 in. × 15.5 in. (about 9 × 40 cm). The structures were inserted lengthwise into the above-described diapers, in between the hourglass-shaped core and the polyethylene backing sheet, the envelope tissue against the hourglass-shaped core.

Additional diapers were prepared by the same method, except that the dimensions of the absorbent structure insert were 2.25 × 15.5 in. (about 6 × 40 cm).

The inserts greatly increased the absorbent capacity for urine of the diapers.

EXAMPLE XII

A soft wood fiber drylap as obtained from a conventional paper making process was sprayed with a 10% solution of a quaternary ammonium compound of the formula



wherein n and m are integers from 2 to 10, R₁ is alkyl-aryl, and R₂ is alkyl having from 1 to 6 carbon atoms (Bercell 579, from Berol Chemicals, Inc., Metairie, LA).

The drylap was sprayed at a rate of 10 g solution per kg dry fiber, corresponding to 0.1% quaternary ammonium compound on the fiber. The drylap was then disintegrated, and the fibers mixed with an acrylic acid grafted starch hydrogel having a weight average particle size of about 250 microns ("Sanwet 1M 1000", from

Sanyo Co., Ltd., Japan) in a fiber/hydrogel ratio of 80:20.

The fiber/hydrogel mixture was formed into an air-laid web having a basis weight of 0.13 g/m² (about 200 g/m²). The web was calendered to a density of about 0.2 g/cm³, corresponding to a thickness of about 0.038 in (about 2 mm). The absorbent structure thus obtained had excellent absorbent properties and softness. Similar structures are prepared, replacing the quaternary ammonium compound with nonionic and anionic softening agents. Structures having substantially similar properties are obtained.

The web containing the quaternary ammonium compound was cut into pads of 11½×16 in (about 30×41 cm). The pads were used in the manufacture of disposable diapers as described in Example VII.

What is claimed is:

1. A flexible, substantially unbonded, absorbent structure comprising an air-laid, substantially dry mixture of hydrophilic fibers and discrete particles of a water-insoluble, cross-linked polymeric hydrogel, in a fiber/hydrogel weight ratio from about 30:70 to about 98:2; said absorbent structure having a density of from about 0.15 to about 1 g/cm³, a moisture content of less than about 10% by weight of the dry absorbent structure and a Gurley Stiffness value of less than 2 grams.

2. An absorbent structure according to claim 1, having a fiber/hydrogel weight ratio of from about 50:50 to about 95:5.

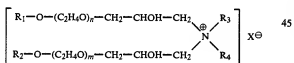
3. An absorbent structure according to claim 1, having a fiber/hydrogel weight ratio of from about 75:25 to about 90:10.

4. An absorbent structure according to claim 1, having a density of from about 0.15 to about 0.6 g/cm³.

5. An absorbent structure according to claim 1, having a density of from about 0.25 to about 0.44 g/cm³.

6. An absorbent structure according to claim 1 wherein the hydrophilic fibers are wood pulp fibers.

7. An absorbent structure according to claim 1, further comprising from about 0.01% to about 0.5% by weight of the hydrophilic fibers of a quaternary ammonium compound of the formula



wherein R₁ and R₂ are hydrocarbyl groups containing from about 8 to about 22 carbon atoms, R₃ and R₄ are alkyl having from 1 to 6 carbon atoms; n and m are integers from 2 to about 10, and X is halogen.

8. An absorbent structure according to claim 1 which has a Gurley Stiffness value of less than 1 g.

9. An absorbent structure according to claim 1, wherein the hydrogel particles have an average particle size of from about 30 microns to about 4 mm.

10. An absorbent structure according to claim 1, wherein the hydrogel particles have an average particle size of from about 50 microns to about 1 mm.

11. A flexible, substantially unbonded, absorbent structure comprising an air-laid, substantially dry mixture of wood pulp fibers and discrete particles of a water-insoluble, cross-linked polymeric hydrogel in a fiber/hydrogel weight ratio of from about 75:25 to about 90:10, said cross-linked polymeric hydrogel being selected from the group consisting of hydrolyzed acry-

lonitrile grafted starch, acrylic acid grafted starch, polyacrylate, co-polymers of isobutylene and maleic anhydride, and mixtures thereof, said particles having an average particle size of from about 50 microns to about 1 mm; said structure having a density of from about 0.15 to about 0.6 g/cm³ and a Gurley Stiffness value of less than 2 grams.

12. A process for making a continuous, flexible absorbent structure, comprising the following steps:

(a) air-laying into a web a dry mixture of hydrophilic fibers and particles of a water-insoluble, cross-linked polymeric hydrogel, said mixture having a fiber/hydrogel weight ratio of from about 30:70 to about 98:2 and a moisture content of less than about 10% by weight of the mixture; and,
(b) compressing the web to a density of from about 0.15 to about 1 g/cm³ and a Gurley Stiffness value of less than 2 grams.

13. A process according to claim 12, whereby the mixture of hydrophilic fibers and hydrogel particles has a fiber/hydrogel weight ratio of from about 50:50 to about 95:5.

14. A process according to claim 12, whereby the mixture of hydrophilic fibers and hydrogel particles has a fiber/hydrogel weight ratio of from about 75:25 to about 90:10.

15. A process according to claim 12 whereby the web is compressed to a density of from about 0.15 to about 0.6 g/cm³.

16. A process according to claim 12 whereby the web is compressed to a density of from about 0.25 to about 0.4 g/cm³.

17. A process according to claim 12, wherein the hydrophilic fibers are wood pulp fibers.

18. A process according to claim 12, wherein the cross-linked polymeric hydrogel is selected from the group consisting of hydrolyzed acrylonitrile grafted starch, acrylic acid grafted starch, polyacrylates, copolymers of isobutylene and maleic anhydride, and mixtures thereof.

19. A process according to claim 12, wherein the hydrogel particles have an average particle size of from about 30 microns to about 4 mm.

20. A process according to claim 12 wherein the hydrogel particles have an average particle size of from about 50 microns to about 1 mm.

21. A process for making a flexible, substantially unbonded, absorbent structure, comprising the following steps:

(a) dry mixing of hydrophilic fibers and particles of a water-insoluble, cross-linked polymeric hydrogel in a weight ratio of from about 75:25 to about 90:10, said particles having an average size of from about 50 microns to about 1 mm, and said cross-linked polymeric hydrogel being selected from the group consisting of hydrolyzed acrylonitrile grafted starch, acrylic acid grafted starch, polyacrylates, copolymers of isobutylene and maleic anhydride, and mixtures thereof to form a fiber/hydrogel mixture having a moisture content of less than 10% by weight;

(b) air-laying of the mixture obtained in step (a) into a web; and

(c) compressing the web into a density of from about 0.15 to about 0.6 g/cm³ and a Gurley Stiffness value of less than 2 grams.

22. An absorbent structure made according to the process of claim 12.

23. An absorbent product comprising the absorbent structure of claim 1.

24. A disposable diaper, comprising:

(a) a liquid impervious backing sheet;

(b) a hydrophobic top sheet;

(c) an absorbent structure according to claim 1, said structure being placed between the backing sheet and the top sheet.

25. A disposable diaper, comprising:

(a) a liquid impervious backing sheet;

(b) a hydrophobic topsheet; and

(c) an absorbent structure according to claim 7, said structure being placed between the backing sheet and the topsheet.

26. A disposable diaper according to claim 24, wherein the absorbent structure has a basis weight of from about 0.01 to about 0.05 g/cm².

27. A disposable diaper according to claim 24 20 wherein the absorbent structure is wrapped in envelope tissue.

28. A disposable diaper according to claim 27 wherein the absorbent structure has a thickness of from about 0.3 mm to about 2 mm.

29. A disposable diaper according to claim 27 wherein the absorbent structure has a thickness of from about 0.5 mm to about 1 mm.

30. A disposable diaper according to claim 24 wherein the absorbent structure is hourglass-shaped.

31. A disposable diaper according to claim 24 further comprising a wood pulp fiber absorbent core which is placed between the hydrophobic top sheet (b) and the absorbent structure (c).

32. A disposable diaper according to claim 31 wherein the wood pulp fiber absorbent core is hourglass shaped and the absorbent structure (c) is rectangular.

33. A sanitary napkin comprising:

(a) a liquid impervious backing sheet;

(b) a hydrophobic top sheet;

(c) an absorbent structure according to claim 1, said structure being placed between the backing sheet and the top sheet.

* * * * *

25

30

35

40

45

50

55

60

65

UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE
CERTIFICATE OF CORRECTION

PATENT NO. : 4,610,678

Page 1 of 2

DATED : September 9, 1986

INVENTOR(S) : Paul T. Weisman and Stephen A. Goldman

It is certified that error appears in the above-identified patent and that said Letters Patent are hereby corrected as shown below:

On the cover page, the assignee should be identified as follows:

--Assignee: The Procter & Gamble Company, Cincinnati, Ohio--.

On the cover page, in the "Related U.S. Application Data" section;

delete "Ser. No. 437,846" and insert therefor --Ser. No. 473,846--.

Column 1, line 7; delete "Ser. No. 437,846" and insert therefor

--Ser. No. 473,846--

Column 19, line 36, in Claim 5;

delete " 0.44 g/cm^3 " and insert therefor $--0.4 \text{ g/cm}^3--$.

Column 19, line 55, in Claim 8;

delete "the".

Column 22, line 22; add the following additional Claim 34;

--34. An absorbent structure according to Claim 1 wherein the water-insoluble hydrogel is a cross-linked polymer selected from the group consisting of hydrolyzed acrylonitrile grafted starch, acrylic acid

UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE
CERTIFICATE OF CORRECTION

PATENT NO. : 4,610,678

Page 2 of 2

DATED : September 9, 1986

INVENTOR(S) : Paul T. Weisman and Stephen A. Goldman

It is certified that error appears in the above-identified patent and that said Letters Patent is hereby corrected as shown below:

grafted starch, polyacrylates, copolymers of isobutylene
and maleic anhydride, and mixtures thereof.--.

**Signed and Sealed this
Second Day of August, 1988**

Attest:

DONALD J. QUIGG

Attesting Officer

Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks

[54] **ABSORBENT ARTICLES WITH DUAL-LAYERED CORES**

[75] Inventors: Paul T. Weisman; Dawn I. Houghton, both of Fairfield, Ohio; Dale A. Gellert, Aurora, Ind.

[73] Assignee: The Procter & Gamble Company, Cincinnati, Ohio

[21] Appl. No.: 895,526

[22] Filed: Aug. 11, 1986

Related U.S. Application Data

[63] Continuation of Ser. No. 734,426, May 15, 1985, abandoned.

[51] Int. Cl.⁴ A61F 13/16
 [52] U.S. Cl. 604/368; 604/378
 [58] Field of Search 604/358, 359, 367, 368, 604/378, 379, 385.1, 394, 396; 428/281, 286, 287, 289

[56] **References Cited**

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

4,501,587 2/1985 Enloe 604/385
 4,540,454 9/1985 Pieniak et al. 156/622
 4,573,987 3/1986 Lamb, Jr. 604/378
 4,573,988 3/1986 Pieniak et al. 604/379
 4,573,989 3/1986 Karani et al. 604/381
 4,585,448 4/1986 Enloe 604/378
 4,605,402 8/1986 Iskra 604/368

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

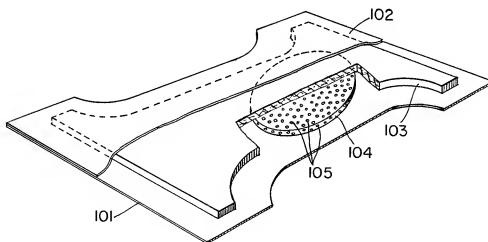
EP-A-158,914 10/1985 European Pat. Off. .
 EP-A-160,572 11/1985 European Pat. Off. .
 EP-A-160,569 11/1985 European Pat. Off. .
 52-99046 7/1977 Japan .
 59-188418 12/1984 Japan .
 2063683 6/1981 United Kingdom .

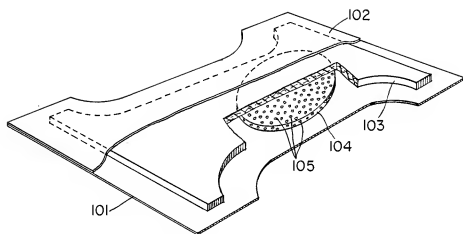
Primary Examiner—John D. Yasko
Attorney, Agent, or Firm—George W. Allen; Steven J. Goldstein; Richard C. Witte

[57] **ABSTRACT**

The present invention provides absorbent articles, such as disposable diapers, which utilize substantially water-insoluble hydrogel material to enhance the absorbent capacity of such articles. In these articles, the hydrogel material, combined in particulate form with hydrophilic fiber material, is primarily placed in a lower fluid storage layer of the absorbent core of the article. Such a fluid storage lower layer of the absorbent core is placed underneath an upper, preferably larger, fluid acquisition/distribution layer containing little or no hydrogel. This lower fluid storage layer is positioned in such a manner that at least about 75% of the hydrogel in the lower layer is found in the front two-thirds of the absorbent article and such that at least about 55% of the hydrogel in the lower layer is found in the front half of the absorbent article. Absorbent articles of this type make especially effective and efficient use of the hydrogel material and may also provide a diaper rash control benefit. Absorbent cores of the type utilized in such articles are also disclosed.

21 Claims, 1 Drawing Figure





ABSORBENT ARTICLES WITH DUAL-LAYERED CORES

This is a continuation of application Ser. No. 734,426, filed on May 15, 1985, now abandoned.

FIELD OF THE INVENTION

This invention relates to absorbent articles using both hydrophilic fiber material and discrete particles of substantially water-insoluble hydrogel as absorbents. Absorbent articles of this type include disposable diapers, adult incontinence pads, sanitary napkins and the like.

BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION

Water-insoluble hydrogels are polymeric materials which are capable of absorbing large quantities of fluids such as water and body wastes and which are further capable of retaining such absorbed fluids under moderate pressures. These absorption characteristics of water-insoluble hydrogels make such materials especially useful for incorporation into absorbent articles such as disposable diapers. Harper et al.; U.S. Pat. No. 3,669,103; Issued June 13, 1972 and Harmon; U.S. Pat. No. 3,670,731; Issued June 20, 1972, for example, both disclose the use of hydrogel, i.e., "hydrocolloid," materials in absorbent products.

The effectiveness of fluid-absorbing hydrogel materials in disposable absorbent articles can be quite dependent upon the form, position and/or manner in which the hydrogel material is incorporated into the absorbent article. In some cases, for example, the effectiveness of hydrogel fluid absorption in absorbent articles can be adversely affected by a phenomenon called gel blocking. The term gel blocking describes a situation that occurs when a hydrogel particle, film, fiber, composite, etc. is wetted. Upon wetting, the surface of the hydrogel material swells and inhibits liquid transmission to the interior of the absorbent material. Wetting of the interior subsequently takes place via a very slow diffusion process. In practical terms, this means that absorption of fluid by the article is much slower than discharge of fluid to be absorbed, and failure of a diaper or sanitary napkin or other absorbent article may take place well before the hydrogel material in the absorbent article is fully saturated.

A number of prior art attempts have been made to improve the effectiveness of hydrogel materials in absorbent articles by minimizing gel blocking tendency. Thus, for Procter & Gamble; European Patent Application EP-A-No. 122,042; Published Oct. 17, 1984 discloses absorbent structures wherein hydrogel particles are dispersed in an air-laid web of hydrophilic fibers compressed to a particular density. Mesek et al.; U.S. Pat. No. 4,235,237; Issued Nov. 25, 1980 discloses an open absorbent network having particles of water-insoluble, water-swellaible material spaced from each other within the network. Mazurak et al.; U.S. Pat. No. 4,381,782; Issued May 3, 1983 discloses absorbent fibrous structures containing mixtures of hydrogel particles and surfactant-treated filler materials. Colgate Palmolive; U.K. Patent Specification No. 2,132,897A; Published July 18, 1984 discloses disposable absorbent articles containing a pad assembly having one or more surfaces coated with absorbent polymer in patterns designed to prevent gel blocking.

Other prior art attempts to improve the effectiveness of hydrogel materials in absorbent structures have in-

involved particular arrangements for positioning hydrogel within the absorbent structure in discrete zones such as layers or pockets. The aforementioned EP-A-No. 122,042, for example, indicates that a hydrogel-containing absorbent structure can be positioned as a lower layer in a disposable absorbent product underneath an upper layer containing only hydrophilic fiber material. Mesek et al.; U.S. Pat. No. 4,102,340; Issued July 25, 1978 discloses an absorbent article having a hydrogel-containing batt positioned underneath a densified layer of fibrous material. Elias; U.S. Pat. No. 4,381,783; Issued May 3, 1983 discloses an absorbent article which includes an absorbent layer containing pockets of an admixture of hydrogel particles and discrete introflying particles. Holtman et al.; U.S. Pat. No. 4,333,426; Issued June 8, 1982 and Holtman; U.S. Pat. No. 4,333,463; Issued June 8, 1982 both disclose absorbent structures containing reservoirs of superabsorbent particles positioned near one end of the structure at the void zone of the wearer. Personal Products Co.; European Patent Application EP-A-No. 108,637; Published May 16, 1984 describes thin absorbent products having a superabsorbent-containing absorbing layer and a wicking layer. Willington; U.K. Patent Specification No. 1,406,615; Published Mar. 15, 1973 discloses an absorbent pad having a urine-gelling agent incorporated only in the part of the pad "where it will be most effective."

Notwithstanding the various prior art attempts to improve the effectiveness of hydrogel materials in absorbent structures and products, there is a continuing need to identify hydrogel-containing absorbent articles wherein the hydrogel material is especially effective and efficient in performing its intended function of holding discharged body fluids without interfering with the acquisition and distribution of body fluids by and within the article. Hydrogel materials are generally significantly more expensive than readily available hydrophilic fiber materials (e.g. cellulose fibers). Accordingly it would be advantageous to provide articles wherein either absorbent capacity of the hydrogel-containing article can be improved or wherein a given absorbent capacity of an article can be maintained while reducing the amount of relatively expensive hydrogel material used. It would also be advantageous to provide articles wherein the fluid-storing hydrogel material does not adversely affect the ability of the absorbent article to quickly acquire discharged body fluids. It is therefore a primary objective of the present invention to provide absorbent articles which are especially effective and efficient in their use of hydrogel absorbent materials.

Another potential advantage which can be provided by certain hydrogel-containing disposable absorbent articles relates to the prevention or reduction of diaper rash. Diaper rash is a common form of irritation and inflammation of those parts of an infant's skin normally covered by a diaper. This condition is also referred to as diaper dermatitis, napkin dermatitis, napkin rash or nappy rash.

It is generally accepted that true "diaper rash" or "diaper dermatitis" is a condition which is commonly, in its most simple stages, a contact irritant dermatitis. The irritation of simple diaper rash results from extended contact of the skin with body waste. Diapers which catch and hold body waste in contact with the skin for long periods of time thus cause and/or aggravate diaper rash.

It has now been discovered that a primary cause of diaper rash is a particular set of conditions which arises as a result of prolonged contact of skin with mixtures of feces and urine. Activity of proteolytic and lipolytic fecal enzymes present in such a mixture is believed to be a major factor in producing skin irritation. Urine in contact with enzymes from feces can also result in production of ammonia which raises skin pH. This rise in skin pH, for example to levels of 6.0 and above, in turn increases that fecal proteolytic and lipolytic enzymatic activity which produces diaper rash.

The foregoing diaper rash model suggests that effective diaper rash control may be achieved by preventing mixtures of urine and feces from contacting diapered skin for any significant length of time. Prior art disposable diaper structures have not in general been designed to eliminate mixing of discharged urine and feces. It is, accordingly, a secondary objective of the present invention to provide absorbent articles such as diapers which hold discharged urine and feces in separate locations within the absorbent article and which might thereby prevent or reduce diaper rash caused by skin contact with urine-feces mixtures.

SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

The present invention provides an absorbent article such as a diaper or incontinence pad which is suitable for absorbing body fluids in an especially effective and efficient manner and which may also prevent or reduce the incidence of diaper rash. Such an absorbent article comprises an elongated liquid impervious backing sheet, a relatively hydrophobic, liquid pervious top-sheet and a layered, absorbent core positioned between the backing sheet and the topsheet.

The absorbent core comprises both an upper fluid acquisition/distribution layer which is preferably elongated and which consists essentially of hydrophilic fiber material and a lower fluid storage layer which consists essentially of a substantially uniform combination of hydrophilic fiber material and discrete particles of substantially water-insoluble hydrogel material.

The upper fluid acquisition layer has a density of from about 0.05 to 0.25 g/cm³ and can optionally contain up to about 8% by weight of the upper layer of particles of substantially water-insoluble hydrogel material. The lower fluid storage layer has a density of from about 0.06 to 0.3 g/cm³ and must contain from about 9% to 60% by weight of the lower layer of the hydrogel particles.

The lower fluid storage layer of the absorbent core has a top surface area which is from about 0.25 to 1.00 times the top surface area of the upper fluid acquisition/distribution layer. The lower fluid storage layer is further positioned relative to the upper fluid acquisition/distribution layer in a manner such that at least about 75% of the hydrogel material in the lower layer is found within the front two-thirds section of the article and such that at least about 55% of the total hydrogel material in the lower layer is found within the front half section of the article.

The present invention also relates to dual-layer absorbent cores, per se, of the type heretofore described, which can be employed in absorbent articles. Cores of the type utilized herein in absorbent articles, in addition to providing especially efficient and effective use of hydrogel absorbents, are also less likely to tear under the stress of wearing and loading.

BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWING

The drawing represents a cut-away view of a diaper structure having a dual-layer absorbent core.

DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF THE INVENTION

The absorbent articles of the present invention can be manufactured in the configuration of wearable disposable products which are capable of absorbing significant quantities of water and body waste fluids such as urine, feces and menses. Thus such articles, for example, may be prepared in the form of disposable diapers, adult incontinence pads, sanitary napkins and the like.

The absorbent articles herein generally comprise three basic structural components. One such component is an elongated, liquid impervious backing sheet. On top of this backing sheet is placed an absorbent core which itself comprises two or more distinct layers. On top of this absorbent core is placed a relatively hydrophobic, water pervious topsheet. The topsheet is the element of the article which is placed next to the skin of the wearer.

Especially preferred absorbent articles of this invention are disposable diapers. Articles in the form of disposable diapers are fully described in Duncan and Baker, U.S. Pat. No. Re. 26,151, Issued Jan. 31, 1967; Duncan, U.S. Pat. No. 3,592,194, Issued July 13, 1971; Duncan and Gellert, U.S. Pat. No. 3,489,148, Issued Jan. 13, 1970; and Buell, U.S. Pat. No. 3,860,003, Issued Jan. 14, 1975; which patents are incorporated herein by reference. A preferred disposable diaper for the purpose of this invention comprises an absorbent core; a top-sheet superposed or co-extensive with one face of the core, and a liquid impervious backsheet superposed or co-extensive with the face of the core opposite the face covered by the topsheet. The backsheet must preferably have a width greater than that of the core thereby providing side marginal portions of the backsheet which extend beyond the core. The diaper is preferably constructed in an hourglass configuration.

The elongated backing sheet (or backsheet) of the articles herein can be constructed, for example, from a thin, plastic film of polyethylene, polypropylene, or other flexible moisture impeding material which is substantially water impervious. Polyethylene, having an embossed caliper of approximately 1.5 mils, is especially preferred. For purposes of this invention, the backsheet is elongated if it is of unequal length and width in the unfolded, flat configuration.

The topsheet of the articles herein can be made in part or completely of synthetic fibers such as polyester, polyolefin, rayon, or the like, or of natural fibers such as cotton. The fibers are typically bound together by a thermal binding procedure or by a polymeric binder such as polyacrylate. This sheet is substantially porous and permits a fluid to readily pass therethrough into the underlying dual-layered absorbent core. The topsheet can be made more or less hydrophobic depending upon the choice and treatment of fiber and binder used in the construction thereof. The topsheets used in the articles of the present invention are relatively hydrophobic in comparison with the absorbent core of said articles. Topsheet construction is generally disclosed in Davidson, U.S. Pat. No. 2,905,176, Issued Sept. 22, 1959; Del Guercio, U.S. Pat. No. 3,063,452, Issued Nov. 13, 1962; and Holliday, U.S. Pat. No. 3,113,570, Dec. 10, 1963, which patents are incorporated herein by reference.

Preferred topsheets are constructed from polyester, rayon, rayon/polyester blends or polypropylene.

An absorbent core, which itself comprises two or more distinct layers, and which is preferably flexible, is positioned between the elongated backing sheet and the topsheet to form the absorbent articles herein. This core essentially comprises both an upper fluid acquisition/distribution layer and a lower fluid storage layer. It should be understood that for purposes of this invention these two types of layers refer merely to the upper and lower zones of the absorbent core and are not necessarily limited to single layers or sheets of material. Thus both the fluid acquisition/distribution layer and the fluid storage layer may actually comprise laminates or combinations of several sheets or webs of the requisite type of materials as hereinafter described. Thus as used herein, the term "layer" includes the terms "layers" and "layered."

One essential element of the absorbent core is an upper fluid acquisition/distribution layer which consists essentially of hydrophilic fiber material. This fluid acquisition/distribution layer serves to quickly collect and temporarily hold discharged body fluid. Since such fluid is discharged in gushes, the upper acquisition/distribution layer must be able to quickly acquire and transport fluid by wicking from the point of initial fluid contact to other parts of the acquisition/distribution layer. In the context of the present invention, it should be noted that the term "fluid" means "liquid."

Various types of hydrophilic fiber material can be used in the upper fluid acquisition/distribution layer of the core. Any type of hydrophilic fiber which is suitable for use in conventional absorbent products is also suitable for use in the upper layer of the core of the present absorbent articles. Specific examples of such fibers include cellulose fibers, rayon, and polyester fibers. Other examples of suitable hydrophilic fibers are hydrophilized hydrophobic fibers, such as surfactant-treated or silica-treated thermoplastic fibers. Also, fibers which do not provide webs of sufficient absorbent capacity to be useful in conventional absorbent structures, but which do provide good wicking properties, are suitable for use in the upper layer of the absorbent core of the present invention. This is so because the primary purpose of the upper layer of the core is to acquire and distribute fluid which has passed through the topsheet. Wicking properties of the fibers in the upper layer are thus of primary importance. For reasons of availability and cost, cellulose fibers, in particular wood pulp fibers, are preferred.

As indicated the primary function of the upper layer of the absorbent core is to receive fluids passing through the relatively hydrophobic, water pervious topsheet and to transport such fluids to other areas of the upper layer and eventually on to the fluid-holding, hydrogel-containing lower fluid storage layer of the core. The upper acquisition/distribution layer of the core can thus be substantially free of hydrogel material. Alternatively, the upper acquisition/distribution layer can contain small amounts of hydrogel material in particle form as hereinafter described. Thus the upper layer can, for example, contain up to about 8%, and preferably no more than about 6%, by weight of the upper layer of hydrogel particles. In some instances, the presence of hydrogel particles in the fluid acquisition/distribution layer can actually serve to maintain the density of the upper layer within the optimum range to promote fluid distribution. The specific type of hydrogel optionally used in the upper layer does not have to be the same

as the hydrogel type essentially employed in the lower layer.

The shape, size and character, including capillarity (e.g., density), of the upper fluid acquisition/distribution layer of the articles herein is of some importance in determining the effectiveness of the resulting absorbent articles in absorbing discharged body fluids. As indicated, the upper absorbent layer of the core is preferably elongated. For purposes of this invention, this means that the upper layer, like the backing sheet, is elongated if it is of unequal length and width in the unfolded, flat configuration. The upper layer in the unfolded configuration can be of any desired shape, for example, rectangular, trapezoidal, oval, oblong or hourglass-shaped. The shape of the upper fluid acquisition/distribution layer of the core will frequently define the general shape of the resulting absorbent article.

The upper fluid acquisition/distribution layer will generally have a density of from about 0.05 to 0.25 g/cm³. The basis weight of the upper layer of the absorbent core will typically range from about 0.015 to 0.1 g/cm². Density values are calculated from basis weight and layer caliper measured on newly unpacked, unfolded and dissected diapers. Caliper is measured under a "gentle" load of 10 grams/cm². Density and basis weight values include the weight of hydrogel particles, if present.

In preferred embodiments of the present invention the upper fluid acquisition/distribution layer of the core will be hourglass-shaped and will be of substantially uniform density within the range of from about 0.07 to 0.14 g/cm³. Preferably, the upper fluid acquisition/distribution layer of the core will have a basis weight ranging from about 0.03 to 0.06 g/cm².

The upper layer of the absorbent core can be prepared in any conventional manner suitable for realizing a web of hydrophilic fiber material. Preferably the upper layer is formed by air-laying a stream of fiber material onto a screen until a web of the desired basis weight is formed. Such a web can subsequently be densified if necessary. Alternatively the upper fluid acquisition/distribution layer can comprise several layers of web material or can comprise, for example, a laminate or stack of tissue paper, provided such a layered structure, e.g., laminate, is of the requisite density hereinbefore set forth.

The lower fluid storage layer of the absorbent core of the articles herein consists essentially of a substantially uniform combination of hydrophilic fiber material and particular amounts of discrete particles of substantially water-insoluble, fluid-absorbing hydrogel material. The principal function of the fluid storage layer is to absorb discharged body fluid from the upper acquisition/distribution layer and retain such fluid under the pressures encountered as a result of the wearer's movements. Ideally the fluid storage lower layer will drain the upper layer of much of its acquired fluid load.

The hydrophilic fibers in the lower fluid storage layer can be of the same type as those hereinbefore described for use in the upper fluid acquisition/distribution layer. As in the upper layer, cellulose fibers, and especially wood pulp fibers and wood pulp tissue, are preferred.

In addition to hydrophilic fiber material, the lower fluid storage layer of the absorbent core of the articles herein also essentially contains discrete particles of substantially water-insoluble hydrogel material. Such hydrogel materials are inorganic or organic compounds

capable of absorbing fluids and retaining them under moderate pressures.

Suitable hydrogels can be inorganic materials such as silica gels or organic compounds such as cross-linked polymers. Cross-linking may be by covalent, ionic, van der Waals, or hydrogen bonding. Examples of hydrogel polymers include polyacrylamides, polyvinyl alcohol, ethylene maleic anhydride copolymers, polyvinyl ethers, hydroxypropyl cellulose, carboxymethyl cellulose, polyvinyl morpholinone, polymers and copolymers of vinyl sulfonic acid, polyacrylates, polyacrylamides, polyvinyl pyridine and the like. Other suitable hydrogels are those disclosed in Assarsson et al., U.S. Pat. No. 3,901,236, Issued Aug. 26, 1975, the disclosure of which is incorporated herein by reference. Particularly preferred hydrogel polymers for use in the absorbent core are hydrolyzed acrylonitrile grafted starch, acrylic acid grafted starch, polyacrylates, and isobutylene maleic anhydride copolymers, or mixtures thereof.

Processes for preparing hydrogels are disclosed in Masuda et al., U.S. Pat. No. 4,076,663, Issued Feb. 28, 1978; in Tsubakimoto et al., U.S. Pat. No. 4,286,082, Issued Aug. 25, 1981; and further in U.S. Pat. Nos. 3,734,876, 3,661,815, 3,670,731, 3,664,343, 3,783,871, and Belgian Patent No. 785,850, the disclosures of which are all incorporated herein by reference.

Hydrogel material optionally found in the upper fluid acquisition/distribution layer and essentially found in the lower fluid storage layer of the absorbent cores herein is used in the form of discrete particles. Hydrogel particles can be of any desired shape, e.g., spherical or semi-spherical, cubic, rod-like, polyhedral, etc. Shapes having a large greatest dimension/smallest dimension ratio, like needles, flakes and fibers, are also contemplated for use herein. Conglomerates of hydrogel particles may also be used.

Although the hydrogel-containing layers are expected to perform well with hydrogel particles having a particle size varying over a wide range, other considerations may preclude the use of very small or very large particles. For reasons of industrial hygiene, average particle sizes smaller than about 30 microns are less desirable. Particles having a smallest dimension larger than about 2 mm may also cause a feeling of grittiness in the absorbent article, which is undesirable from a consumer aesthetics standpoint. Furthermore, rate of fluid absorption is affected by hydrogel particle size. Larger particles have very much reduced rates of absorption. Preferred for use herein are hydrogel particles having an average particle size of from about 50 microns to about 1 mm. "Particle Size" as used herein means the weighted average of the smallest dimension of the individual particles.

The relative amount of hydrophilic fiber material and hydrogel particles used in the lower fluid storage layer of the absorbent cores of the articles herein can be most conveniently expressed in terms of a weight percentage of the lower layer. The lower fluid storage layer of the absorbent cores herein must contain from about 9% to 60%, preferably from about 15% to 40%, by weight of the lower layer of hydrogel material. This concentration of hydrogel material can also be expressed in terms of a weight ratio of hydrogel to fiber. These ratios may range from about 9:91 to about 60:40. For most commercially available hydrogels the optimum hydrogel/fiber ratio is in the range of from about 9:91 to about 50:50. Based on a cost/performance analysis, hy-

drogel/fiber ratios of from about 20:80 to about 33:67 are preferred for use in the lower fluid storage layer.

The density of the hydrogel-containing lower fluid storage layer of the absorbent core can be of some importance in determining the absorbent properties of the resulting absorbent article. The density of the lower fluid storage layer will generally be in the range of from about 0.06 to about 0.3 g/cm³, and more preferably within the range of from about 0.09 to about 0.18 g/cm³. Typically the basis weight of the lower fluid storage layer can range from about 0.02 to 0.12 gm/cm². As with the upper layer, density values for the lower layer are calculated from basis weight and layer caliper measured on newly unpacked, unfolded and dissected articles. Caliper is measured under a "gentle" load of 10 grams/cm². Density and basis weight values include the weight of the hydrogel particles.

In a preferred embodiment of the present invention, the lower fluid storage layer will comprise an intimate admixture of hydrophilic fiber material and hydrogel particles with the hydrogel particles preferably being substantially uniformly distributed throughout a hydrophilic fiber matrix. Absorbent core lower fluid storage layers of this type can be formed by air-laying a dry mixture of hydrophilic fibers and hydrogel particles and densifying the resulting web. Such a procedure is described more fully in Procter & Gamble, European Patent Publication No. EP-A-No. 122,042; Published Oct. 17, 1984, incorporated herein by reference. As indicated in this reference, the webs formed by this procedure for use as the lower fluid storage layer will preferably comprise substantially unbonded fibers and will preferably have a moisture content of 10% or less.

Alternatively, the substantially uniform combination of hydrophilic fiber material and hydrogel particles used as the fluid storage layer of the core can comprise a laminate of at least two layers of dispersed hydrogel particles, overwrapped with and separated by sheets of hydrophilic fiber material such as tissue paper. Such a laminate structure is more fully described in Kramer, Young and Koch; U.S. Ser. No. 563,339; Filed Dec. 20, 1983, incorporated herein by reference.

It has been discovered that the hydrogel-containing lower fluid storage layer of the absorbent core need not be as large as the upper fluid acquisition/distribution layer of the core and can, in fact, have a top surface area (in the unfolded configuration) which is substantially smaller than the top surface area (unfolded) of the upper layer of the absorbent core. Generally, the top surface area of the lower fluid storage layer will range from 0.25 to 1.0 times that of the upper acquisition/distribution layer. More preferably the top surface area of the lower layer will be only from about 0.25 to 0.75, and most preferably from about 0.3 to 0.5, times that of the upper layer.

In accordance with the present invention, the lower fluid storage layer of the absorbent core must be placed in a specific positional relationship with respect to the backing sheet and/or the upper fluid acquisition/distribution layer in the absorbent article. More particularly, the hydrogel-containing lower fluid storage layer of the core must be positioned generally toward the front of the absorbent article so that hydrogel is most effectively located to drain and hold discharged body fluid from the upper acquisition/distribution layer. For purposes of the present invention, the front of the absorbent articles herein means the end of the absorbent article which is intended to be placed on the front of the wearer. Thus

the lower fluid storage layer is to be placed in the vicinity of the point of discharge of body fluids.

The generally forward positioning of the lower hydrogel-containing fluid storage layer can be defined by specifying the percentage of total lower layer hydrogel which is found forward of particular points along the length of the absorbent article. Thus, in accordance with the present invention, the lower hydrogel-containing fluid storage layer is positioned relative to the upper elongated backing sheet and/or the acquisition/distribution layer such that (1) at least about 75% of the total hydrogel in the lower fluid storage layer is found within the front two-thirds section of the absorbent article, and (2) at least about 55% of the total hydrogel in the lower fluid storage layer is found within the front half section of the absorbent article.

More preferably, the lower fluid storage layer of the core is positioned relative to the elongated backing sheet and/or the upper acquisition/distribution layer such that at least about 90% of the total hydrogel in the lower layer is found in the front two-thirds section and at least about 60% of the total hydrogel in the lower layer is found in the front half section of the absorbent article. As noted, for purposes of the present invention, "sections" of the absorbent article can be defined by reference to top surface areas of the unfolded absorbent article found in front of a given point on the line which defines the length of the absorbent article.

For purposes of determining such lower layer positioning, the length of the absorbent article will be taken as the normal longest longitudinal dimension of the elongated article backing sheet. This normal longest dimension of the elongated backing sheet can be defined with respect to the article as it is applied to the wearer. When worn, the opposing ends of the backing sheet are fastened together so that these joined ends form a circle around the wearer's waist. The normal length of the backing sheet will thus be the length of the line running through the backing sheet from (a) the point on the edge of the backing sheet at the middle of the wearer's back waist, through the crotch, to (b) the point on the opposite edge of the backing sheet at the middle of the wearer's front waist.

In the usual instance wherein the upper layer of the absorbent core generally defines the shape of the absorbent article, the normal length of the elongated article backing sheet will be approached by the longest longitudinal dimension of the upper layer of the core. In such instances the positioning of the hydrogel-containing lower fluid storage layer can also be defined with respect to its location toward the front portion of the elongated upper fluid acquisition/distribution layer. However, in some applications (e.g. adult incontinence articles) wherein bulk reduction or minimum cost are important, the upper fluid acquisition/distribution layer would not take on the general shape of the diaper or incontinence structure. Rather the upper layer would be generally located to cover only the genital region of the wearer and could in this case have approximately the same top surface area as the lower fluid storage layer. In this instance both the upper fluid acquisition/distribution layer and the co-extensive lower fluid storage layer would be located toward the front of the article as defined by the backing sheet such that the requisite percentages of lower layer hydrogel would be found in the front two-thirds and front half sections respectively of the article.

The lower fluid storage layer of the absorbent core can be of any desired shape consistent with comfortable fit including, for example, circular, rectangular, trapezoidal or oblong, e.g., hourglass-shaped, dog-bone-shaped or oval. This lower fluid storage layer need not be physically separated from the upper fluid acquisition/distribution layer and can simply form a zone of high hydrogel concentration in a continuous web of fiber material. More preferably, however, the lower fluid storage layer of the absorbent core will comprise a separate web which can be used as an insert placed underneath a larger elongated upper acquisition/distribution layer. If desired, such an insert can be wrapped in a high wet strength envelope web such as tissue paper or a synthetic fine pore, e.g., nonwoven, material, to minimize the potential for hydrogel particles to migrate out of the insert layer. Another objective of such overwrapping is to desirably increase the in-use integrity of the dual layer core. Such a web can, in fact, be glued to the lower fluid storage insert layer. Suitable means for carrying out this gluing operation include the glue spraying procedure described in Minetola and Tucker, U.S. patent application Ser. No. 651,374, filed Sept. 17, 1984, incorporated herein by reference.

In preferred embodiments, the lower fluid storage layer of the absorbent core will be oblong. In especially preferred embodiments, an oblong insert overwrapped with spray-glued tissue will be employed.

One embodiment of an absorbent article according to the present invention comprises a disposable diaper such as that shown in the drawing. This drawing shows an hourglass-shaped diaper structure comprising a liquid impervious elongated sheet 101 and a hydrophobic water pervious topsheet 102. The absorbent core of the structure comprises two separate layers, i.e., an upper, hourglass-shaped, fluid acquisition/distribution layer 103 and a smaller, lower, oval insert fluid storage layer upper layer 103 comprises a web of air-laid cellulose fibers. The lower oval insert layer 104 comprises a web of cellulose fibers and contains discrete particles 105 of water-insoluble hydrogel distributed throughout this lower oval insert layer. The lower oval insert layer 104 positioned beneath the upper layer 103 toward the front of the diaper. In this manner at least 90% of the hydrogel material 105 in the lower insert layer 104 is found underneath the front two-thirds section of the upper layer 103 and at least 60% of this hydrogel material 105 is found underneath the front half section of the upper layer 103.

Another embodiment of the present invention relates to disposable, dual-layered absorbent cores per se which could be removably affixed, for example, to semi-disposable, reusable backsheets. Such cores are essentially the same as those described hereinbefore for use in the disposable absorbent articles of this invention. However, the positioning of the hydrogel in the lower fluid storage layer of such cores per se must be defined with respect to the front two-thirds and front half sections of the elongated upper fluid acquisition/distribution layer of the core. Thus the disposable cores per se utilize a lower fluid storage layer which is particularly positioned with respect to the upper fluid acquisition/distribution layer, or which has nonuniform hydrogel distribution therein, such that at least about 75% of the lower layer hydrogel is found in the front two-thirds section of the elongated core as defined by the length of upper layer and at least about 55% of the lower layer hydrogel is found in the front half section of the core as

defined by the length of the elongated upper layer. Such disposable cores per se are preferably overwrapped or at least covered on top with liquid pervious topsheet material, e.g. tissue or non-woven material as hereinbefore described.

The absorbent articles and absorbent cores of the present invention, with their separate, particularly positioned zones containing fiber material and hydrogel material in particular amounts, are further illustrated by the following examples:

EXAMPLE I

A dual core disposable diaper is prepared utilizing a thermally bonded polypropylene topsheet, an hourglass-shaped primary core positioned below the topsheet, an oval insert positioned underneath the hourglass-shaped core and a fluid-impervious polyethylene backing sheet underneath the hourglass and insert core layers. The hourglass primary core comprises a major amount of cellulose wood pulp fiber and a minor amount of discrete particles of a starch acrylate hydrogel material. The oval insert layer comprises an air-laid mixture of cellulose wood pulp fibers and discrete particles of the same starch acrylate hydrogel material, present in a concentration significantly higher than in the hourglass layer. The oval insert is positioned toward the front of the hourglass such that 90% of the hydrogel material in the insert layer is found within the front two-thirds section of the disposable diaper and such that about 60% of the hydrogel in the insert is in the front half of the disposable diaper.

The two layers of the absorbent core of the diaper of this Example I are more completely described in Table I.

TABLE I

<u>Hourglass:</u>	
Density	0.22 g/cm ³
Basis Weight	0.033 g/cm ²
Area	643 cm ²
% Hydrogel*	2% by weight of hourglass
<u>Insert:</u>	
Density	0.22 g/cm ³
Basis Weight	0.05 g/cm ²
Area	221 cm ²
% Hydrogel	20% by weight of insert
Overall Hydrogel Content:	8.1% by weight of total core

*The hydrogel is Sanwet IM-1000, a starch acrylate material marketed by Sanwo Chemical Industries, Inc.

EXAMPLE II

Another dual core disposable diaper is prepared which is similar in construction to the Example I diaper. In this Example II article, the hourglass-shaped upper fluid acquisition/distribution layer of the absorbent core contains no hydrogel material at all so that all of the hydrogel in the diaper is found in the smaller oval insert layer. Again, the insert is positioned under the hourglass upper layer toward the front of the diaper such that 100% of the hydrogel material in the oval insert layer is found in the front two-thirds section of the diaper and such that about 60% of the hydrogel material in the oval insert is found in the front half of the diaper.

In this embodiment, the oval insert layer is overwrapped with spray glued high wet strength tissue to prevent particles of hydrogel from migrating from the oval insert core to other parts of the diaper. The disposable diaper of this example is more completely described in Table II.

TABLE II

<u>Hourglass:</u>	
Dimensions	151 × 10 in. (38.7 × 25.4 cm)
Area	100 in ² (645 cm ²)
Density	0.18 g/cm ³
Basis Weight	0.19 g/in ² (0.02945 g/cm ²)
<u>Insert:</u>	
Dimensions	9 × 51 in. (22.9 × 13.3 cm)
Area	41.3 in ² (266 cm ²)
Density	0.18 g/cm ³
Basis Weight	0.31 g/in ² (0.048 g/cm ²)
Hydrogel* Content	4.95 gm (36% by weight of insert)

*The hydrogel is Sanwet IM-1000 marketed by Sanwo Chemical Industries, Inc.

EXAMPLE III

Fluid retention effectiveness of diapers such as described in Example I is determined by means of a leakage study. In such a leakage study, diapers are actually worn by infants. The infants are allowed to play in a nursery school-like setting during the test. The diapers are left on the infants until leakage occurs. In order to speed up the test, aliquots of synthetic urine are added at predetermined levels. The results of the leakage tests are reported in terms of average fluid capacity of the diaper at failure. By assuming that the cellulose fiber portion of the diaper core will hold about 4.0-4.5 grams of fluid per gram of fiber, it is possible to ca an approximate overall effective hydrogel capacity in terms of grams of fluid held per gram of hydrogel under simulated usage conditions.

The diapers tested in the leakage study were diapers of the Example I type having an hourglass-shaped primary absorbent core and an oval insert core positioned beneath the hourglass core and placed toward the front of the diaper. Density, basis weight and surface area of these two cores are as shown in Table I. The amount of hydrogel in the hourglass and the insert is then varied as set forth in Table III.

TABLE III

Diaper No.	1	2	3	4	5	6
% Hydrogel in Hourglass	15	10	6	2	6	2
% Hydrogel in Insert	15	10	25	30	15	20
Overall Hydrogel	15	10	12.5	11.6	9.1	8.1
Content %						
Results						
Mean Capacity at	226	195	244	234	209	231
Diaper Failure (g)	21.8	21.6	30.3	29.4	28.6	39.4
Overall Effective Hydrogel Capacity (g/g)						

The Table III data indicate that by placing most of the hydrogel particles in a forward positioned insert core, effective hydrogel capacity can be increased. Furthermore, it can be seen that diaper capacity for all of these diaper executions is not significantly different even though diapers 3, 4, 5 and 6 with the hydrogel mostly in the insert use a smaller total amount of hydrogel.

EXAMPLE IV

The diaper of Example II having no hydrogel in the primary upper layer is also tested in a leakage study. Performance of the Example II diaper was compared with that of a similar dual core diaper having hydrogel uniformly distributed throughout both an hourglass-shaped primary core and a smaller oval insert placed underneath the hourglass. Again measurements for overall diaper capacity at failure and hydrogel effi-

ciency in terms of fluid held per gram of hydrogel were determined. Also determined was the extent of fluid wicking which occurs in the primary hourglass-shaped upper core layer.

Diapers tested, leakage study and wicking results are shown in Table IV.

TABLE IV

Diaper Type	Hydrogel in Insert Only	Uniform Hydrogel Distribution
Cellulose Fiber	28.6 g	27.5 g
Hydrogel	4.95 g	6.13 g
Tissue	2.2 g	2.3 g
Avg. Overall Urine Load (g)	291	282
Avg. Hydrogel Efficiency (g/g)	29.75	24.2
Avg. Length of Dry Core at Back (cm)	0.76	4.62

The Table IV data demonstrate the improved effi-

tion/distribution layer which is approximately 38.7 cm long \times 25.4 cm wide (625 cm² in area) and a tissue-wrapped, oblong fluid-storage, lower insert layer which is approximately 25.4 cm long \times 11.4 cm wide (270.9 cm² in area). The amounts of cellulose fiber hydrogel in each layer are varied, but in all instances the lower, fluid storage insert layer is positioned toward the front of the diaper such that at least about 90% of the hydrogel material in the insert is found in the front two-thirds section of the diaper and at least about 60% of the hydrogel in the insert is found in the front half of the diaper. The control diaper has a single, tissue-wrapped hour-glass-shaped core which is approximately 38.7 cm long \times 21.6 cm wide (614.2 cm² in area).

All of these diapers are described in greater detail in Table V. Table V also includes an indication of the relative cost of materials used in the dual-layer core diaper cores vis-a-vis to the cost of materials used in the core of the single core diaper.

TABLE V

	Example No.					
	Control	V	VII	VIII	IX	
	Core Type		Core Type		Core Type	
Absorbent Materials	Uniform Single Layer	D/L	D/L	D/L	D/L	D/L
Cellulose Fiber (gm)	37.8	(upper/lower)	23/11.0	(upper/lower)	19.6/12.3	23.5/12.1
Hydrogel* (gm)	6.13	0/4.5	1.2/2.3	/6.3	0/3.1	0/4.8
Percent Hydrogel in Cellulose (%)	14.0	0/30	5/17	0/36	0/20	0/28.4
Tissue (gm)	2.3	0/3.5	0/3.5	0/4.4	0/2.2	0/2.2
Basis Weight in Crotch (g/cm ²)	0.10	0.033/0.059	0.039/0.048	0.36/0.060	0.030/0.054	0.036/0.058
Density in Crotch (g/cm ³)	0.14	0.10/0.14	0.11/0.12	0.11/0.14	0.10/0.12	0.10/0.13
Relative Absorbent Core Cost (%)	100	81	81	104	72	92

*The hydrogel is Senwet IM-1000 marketed by Sanyo Chemical Industries, Inc.
D/L = Dual Layer

ciency of hydrogel fluid absorption performance which can be realized by placing the hydrogel exclusively in a particular type of smaller insert core positioned toward the front of the diaper. The Table IV data also demonstrate that the hydrogel-free hourglass core tends to provide better wicking performance than a hydrogel-45 containing hourglass. It should be noted, however, that even though urine wicks further to the back of the hourglass-shaped core in diapers of this invention, there is still substantially no rewet of the skin through the topsheet at the back portion of the diaper. This is so because urine load at the rear of the hourglass is relatively small compared to urine load in the insert.

The diapers of Examples I and II are, in fact, especially effective in capturing discharged urine and holding such urine in the hydrogel-containing lower fluid storage layer of the diaper. There is thus substantially no contact of diapered skin with mixtures of urine and feces. Such separation of urine and feces into different regions of the diaper can provide a significant skin condition benefit in terms of prevention or reduction of the incidence of diaper rash.

EXAMPLES V-IX

Several dual core diaper executions similar to that of Example I are prepared and tested in comparison with a control diaper having hydrogel uniformly distributed in a single hour-glass-shaped core. The dual core di-65 apers all have an upper, hourglass-shaped fluid acqui-

The single layer and dual layer core diapers of Table V are tested in two types of leakage studies. One such study is of the same general type described in Example III hereinbefore. In addition to providing the overall average urine load at failure and the effective average hydrogel load, such a test also provides measurements of several additional diaper performance parameters. For example, by carefully visually inspecting and by dissecting the diaper at the end of the wearing period, it can be determined whether the diaper core held together and did not tear under the stresses of wearing and loading. It is also possible to determine the percent of urine held by each layer of the diaper, e.g., percent of urine held in the fluid storage layer. Finally, it is possible to determine the extent of wicking provided by the acquisition/distribution layer by measuring how far back the acquisition/distribution layer has been wetted.

In a second type of leakage study, diapers are worn by infants in the home under actual usage conditions. Mothers weigh the test diapers at the time of removal and observe and record the extent to which leakage has occurred. In this manner, it is possible to calculate the percent of diapers in the test that fail up to given loading levels.

Results from these two types of leakage studies are provided in Table VI. The Table VI data represent an average of several tests. Not all types of leakage data are available for every diaper type tested.

TABLE VI

Performance Evaluation	Control	Example No.				
		V	V I	V II	V III	I X
		Core Type:				
	Uniform Single Layer	D/L	D/L	D/L	D/L	D/L
(1) Leakage Study						
Avg. Overall Urine Load (g)	312	337	N/A	399	298	343
Avg. Hydrogel Load (g/g)	21.4	44.0	N/A	36.7	47.4	36.9
% Urine Held in Lower Core (%)	—	81	N/A	73	70	71
Avg. Length of Dry Core at Back (cm)	8.8	0.6	N/A	0.79	0.25	1.8
% Reduction in Diaper Core Tearing Versus Base (Accelerated Usage Conditions) (%)	Base	N/A	N/A	100	93	46
(2) Percent Leakage in Home Study (Overnight Use)						
% of Diapers Failed at Loadings up to 150 g. of Urine (%)	4.6	0.3	1.8	N/A	N/A	1.3
% of Diapers Failed at Loadings up to 300 g. of Urine (%)	12.0	6.8	8.1	N/A	N/A	4.6

N/A = Not Available

D/L = Dual Layer

The Table VI data illustrate that there are a number of important advantages provided by the diaper constructions utilizing the dual core configuration of this invention. In the first place, it can be seen that the hydrogel is much more efficiently utilized as best indicated by the improved hydrogel load values in comparison with the control. Furthermore, the storage layer contains most of the fluid (e.g., 70-80%) even though it provides less than half of the absorbent weight. This is desirable since fluid stored in this layer is more resistant to release upon pressure. Thus the diapers of the present invention minimize the release of fluid back through the topsheet, thereby keeping the infant's skin drier. It should also be noted that by having most of the fluid held in the fluid storage layer positioned toward the front of the diaper, there is a significantly reduced tendency for urine to mix with feces at the back of the the diaper in contact with the wearer's skin.

The Table VI data also demonstrate that wicking in the dual layer core products is much more efficient as shown by the much smaller dry area at the back of the acquisition/distribution layer of the core. Furthermore, it can be seen that the dual layer core structure has improved resistance to tearing as shown by the percent reduction in diaper tearing versus the base non-layered core product.

Finally the Table VI data show that higher diaper capacity can be obtained at similar relative cost of core material or, alternatively, that approximately equal diaper capacity can be realized for 20-30% less cost in comparison with single uniform core structures due to the more efficient use and placement of the hydrogel material. Even when the dual layer core products are designed to have equal capacity to homogenous core products in a leakage study context, the dual layer design will have fewer leaks in home use because their performance is more reliable as well as more efficient. Such better reliability is best illustrated by the lower percent leakages in the home testing under overnight stress use.

What is claimed is:

1. A disposable absorbent article comprising:
 - (A) a liquid impervious, elongated backing sheet;
 - (B) a relatively hydrophobic, liquid pervious top-sheet; and

(C) a layered absorbent core positioned between said backing sheet and said topsheet, said core comprising:

- (i) an upper fluid acquisition/distribution layer having a density of from about 0.05 to 0.25 g/cm³ and consisting essentially of hydrophilic fiber material and from 0% to about 8% by weight of said upper layer of particles of substantially water-in-soluble hydrogel material; and
- (ii) a lower fluid storage layer having a density of from about 0.06 to 0.3 g/cm³ and consisting essentially of a substantially uniform combination of hydrophilic fiber material and from about 9% to 60% by weight of said lower layer of particles of substantially water-insoluble hydrogel material;

said lower fluid storage layer having a top surface area which is from about 0.25 to 1.0 times that of said upper fluid acquisition/distribution layer and said lower fluid storage layer further being positioned relative to said backing sheet and said upper layer in a manner such that at least about 75% of the hydrogel material in said lower layer is found within the front two-thirds section of said absorbent article and such that at least about 55% of the hydrogel material in said lower layer is found within the front half section of said absorbent article.

2. An article according to claim 1 wherein

- (A) the upper fluid acquisition/distribution layer is elongated and has a density which ranges from about 0.07 to 0.14 g/cm³;
- (B) the lower fluid storage layer comprises an intimate admixture of hydrophilic fiber material and hydrogel particles and has a density which ranges from about 0.09 to 0.18 g/cm³;
- (C) the lower fluid storage layer contains from about 15% to 40% by weight of said lower layer of hydrogel material substantially uniformly distributed throughout a hydrophilic fiber matrix;
- (D) the lower fluid storage layer has a top surface area which is from about 0.25 to 0.75 times that of said upper layer; and
- (E) at least about 90% of the hydrogel material in said lower fluid storage layer is found in the front two-thirds section of said absorbent article.

thirds section of the absorbent article and at least about 60% of the hydrogel material in the lower fluid storage layer is found in the front half section of the absorbent article.

3. An article according to claim 1 wherein the fluid storage layer comprises a laminate of at least two layers of dispersed hydrogel particles separated by and over-wrapped with sheets of hydrophilic fiber material.

4. An article according to claim 1, 2 or 3 wherein the hydrophilic fiber material comprises cellulose fibers and wherein the substantially water-insoluble hydrogel material is selected from hydrolyzed acrylonitrile grafted starch, acrylic acid grafted starch, polyacrylates, isobutylene maleic anhydride co-polymers or mixtures of such hydrogel materials.

5. An article according to claim 4 wherein the upper fluid acquisition/distribution layer is substantially free of hydrogel material.

6. An article according to claim 4 wherein the upper fluid acquisition/distribution layer contains hydrogel particles in an amount up to about 6% by weight of said upper layer.

7. An article according to claim 4 wherein

(A) the upper fluid acquisition/distribution layer has a basis weight of from about 0.015 to 0.1 gm/cm² and

(B) the lower fluid storage layer has a basis weight of from about 0.02 to 0.12 gm/cm².

8. A disposable diaper article comprising

(A) a liquid-impervious, elongated backing sheet;

(B) a relatively hydrophobic, liquid pervious top-sheet;

(C) a layered absorbent core positioned between said backing sheet and said topsheet, said absorbent core comprising;

(i) an elongated upper fluid acquisition/distribution layer having a density of from about 0.07 to 0.14 g/cm³, consisting essentially of hydrophilic fiber material; and being substantially free of hydrogel material; and

(ii) a lower fluid storage layer having a density of from about 0.09 to 0.18 g/cm³ and consisting essentially of an intimate admixture of hydrophilic fiber material and from about 9% to 60% by weight of said lower layer of particles of substantially water-insoluble hydrogel material; said lower fluid storage layer having a top surface area which is from about 0.25 to 0.75 times that of said upper fluid acquisition/distribution layer and said lower fluid storage layer further being positioned relative to said backing sheet and said upper fluid acquisition/distribution layer in a manner such that at least about 90% of the hydrogel material in said lower layer is found within the front two-thirds section of said diaper article and such that at least about 60% of the hydrogel material in said lower layer is found within the front half section of said diaper article.

9. A diaper article according to claim 8 wherein the hydrophilic fiber material comprises cellulose fibers and wherein the substantially water-insoluble hydrogel material is selected from hydrolyzed acrylonitrile-grafted starch, acrylic acid grafted starch, polyacrylates, isobutylene maleic anhydride co-polymers or mixtures of such hydrogel materials.

10. A diaper article according to claim 8 or 9 wherein

(A) the upper fluid acquisition/distribution layer is generally hourglass-shaped and has a basis weight of from about 0.015 to 0.1 gm/cm²; and

(B) the lower fluid storage layer is generally oblong and has a basis weight of from about 0.02 to 0.12 gm/cm².

11. A diaper article according to claim 10 wherein said generally oblong lower fluid storage layer comprises an air laid mixture of cellulose fibers and particles of substantially water-insoluble hydrogel material.

12. A diaper article according to claim 10 wherein the particles of hydrogel in said lower fluid storage layer range in size from about 50 microns to 1 mm and wherein said particles comprise from about 15% to 40% by weight of said lower layer.

13. A disposable diaper article comprising

(A) a liquid-impervious, elongated backing sheet;

(B) a relatively hydrophobic, liquid pervious top-sheet; and

(C) a layered absorbent core positioned between said backing sheet and said topsheet, said absorbent core comprising:

(i) an elongated upper fluid acquisition/distribution layer having a density of from about 0.07 to 0.14 g/cm³, and consisting essentially of hydrophilic fiber material and up to about 6% by weight of said upper layer of particles of substantially water-insoluble hydrogel material; and

(ii) a lower fluid storage layer having a density of from about 0.09 to 0.18 g/cm³ and consisting essentially of an intimate admixture of hydrophilic fiber material and from about 15% to 40% by weight of said lower layer of particles of substantially water-insoluble hydrogel material; lower fluid storage layer having a top surface area which is from about 0.25 to 0.75 times that of said upper fluid acquisition/distribution layer and said lower fluid storage layer further being positioned relative to said backing sheet and said upper fluid acquisition/distribution layer in a manner such that at least about 90% of the hydrogel material in said lower layer is found within the front two-thirds section of said diaper article and such that at least about 60% of the hydrogel material in said lower layer is found within the front half section of said diaper article.

14. A diaper article according to claim 13 wherein the hydrophilic fiber material comprises cellulose fibers and wherein the substantially water-insoluble hydrogel material is selected from hydrolyzed acrylonitrile-grafted starch, acrylic acid grafted starch, polyacrylates, isobutylene maleic anhydride co-polymers or mixtures of such hydrogel materials.

15. A diaper article according to claim 13 or 14 wherein

(A) the upper fluid acquisition/distribution layer is generally hourglass-shaped and has a basis weight of from about 0.015 to 0.1 gm/cm²; and

(B) the lower fluid storage layer is generally oblong and has a basis weight of from about 0.02 to 0.12 gm/cm².

16. A diaper article according to claim 15 wherein said generally oblong lower fluid storage layer comprises an air laid mixture of cellulose fibers and particles of substantially water-insoluble hydrogel material.

17. A diaper article according to claim 15 wherein the particles of hydrogel in said upper and lower layers range in size from about 50 microns to 1 mm.

18. A diaper article according to claim 1, 2, 8 or 13 wherein said lower fluid storage layer is a separate insert layer which is over-wrapped with high wet strength envelope web.

19. A diaper article according to claim 18 wherein the envelope web is tissue and is glue-sprayed to the lower fluid storage insert layer.

20. A disposable diaper article comprising

(A) a liquid-impervious, elongated backing sheet;

(B) a relatively hydrophobic, liquid pervious top-sheet;

(C) a layered absorbent core positioned between said backing sheet and said topsheet, said absorbent core comprising;

(i) an elongated upper fluid acquisition/distribution layer having a density of from about 0.07 to 0.14 g/cm³ and consisting essentially of hydrophilic fiber material and from 0% to about 6% by weight of said upper layer of particles of substantially water-insoluble hydrogel material; and

(ii) a lower fluid storage layer having a density of from about 0.06 to 0.3 g/cm³ and consisting essentially of a laminate of at least two layers of dispersed particles of substantially water-in-soluble hydrogel material separated by and over-wrapped with sheets of tissue, said hydrogel particles comprising from about 9% to 60% by weight of said lower layer;

said lower fluid storage layer having a top surface area which is from about 0.25 to 0.75 times that of said upper fluid acquisition/distribution layer and said lower fluid storage layer further being positioned relative to said backing sheet and said upper

fluid acquisition/distribution layer in a manner such that at least about 90% of the hydrogel material in said lower layer is found within the front two-thirds section of said diaper article and such that at least about 60% of the hydrogel material in said lower layer is found within the front half section of said diaper article.

21. A disposable, dual-layer absorbent core suitable for use in an absorbent article, said absorbent core comprising

(A) an elongated upper fluid acquisition/distribution layer having a density of from about 0.05 to 0.25 g/cm³ and consisting essentially of hydrophilic fiber material and from 0% to about 8% by weight of said upper layer of particles of substantially water-insoluble hydrogel material; and

(B) a lower fluid storage layer having a density of from about 0.06 to 0.3 g/cm³ and consisting essentially of a substantially uniform combination of hydrophilic fiber material and from about 9% to 60% by weight of said lower layer of particles of substantially water-insoluble hydrogel material;

said lower fluid storage layer having a top surface area which is from about 0.25 to 1.0 times that of said upper fluid acquisition/distribution layer and said lower fluid storage layer further being positioned relative to said upper layer in a manner such that at least about 75% of the hydrogel material in said lower layer is found within the front two-thirds section of said absorbent core and such that at least about 55% of the hydrogel material in said lower layer is found within the front half of said absorbent core.

* * * * *

UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE
CERTIFICATE OF CORRECTION

PATENT NO. : 4,673,402

Page 1 of 2

DATED : June 16, 1987

INVENTOR(S) : Paul T. Weisman, Dawn I. Houghton, Dale A. Gellert

It is certified that error appears in the above-identified patent and that said Letters Patent are hereby corrected as shown below:

Column 1, line 17, "c le" should be --capable--

Column 2, line 15, "4,333,426" should be --4,333,462--

Column 4, line 67, "December 10, 1963" should be --Issued
December 10, 1963--

Column 10, line 38, "upper layer 103" should be --104. The
upper layer 103--

Column 10, line 39, "layer 104 comprises" should be --layer
104 also comprises--

Column 10, line 43, "positioned" should be --is positioned--

Column 12, line 27, "ca" should be --calculate--

Column 13, line 65, "Example I" should be --Example II--

Column 14, line 2, "625" should be --625.6--

Column 16, line 32, "water-in-soluble" should be --water-
insoluble--

Column 18, line 8, "layer/comprises" should be --layer
comprises--

Column 19, line 17, "cm²" should be --cm³--

UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE
CERTIFICATE OF CORRECTION

PATENT NO. : 4,673,402

Page 2 of 2

DATED : June 16, 1987

INVENTOR(S) : Paul T. Weisman et al

It is certified that error appears in the above-identified patent and that said Letters Patent is hereby corrected as shown below:

Column 19, line 24, "water-in-soluble" should be
--water-insoluble--.

**Signed and Sealed this
Nineteenth Day of July, 1988**

Attest:

DONALD J. QUIGG

Attesting Officer

Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks

- [54] HIGH DENSITY ABSORBENT MEMBERS HAVING LOWER DENSITY AND LOWER BASIS WEIGHT ACQUISITION ZONES
- [75] Inventors: Miguel Alemany; Charles J. Berg, both of Cincinnati, Ohio
- [73] Assignee: The Proctor & Gamble Company, Cincinnati, Ohio
- [21] Appl. No.: 887,584
- [22] Filed: Jul. 18, 1986
- [51] Int. Cl.⁴ A61F 13/16
- [52] U.S. Cl. 604/368; 428/213; 428/218; 428/283; 428/284; 428/913
- [58] Field of Search 428/283, 284, 213, 218, 428/913; 604/368

References Cited

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

Re. 29,789	10/1978	Kolbach .	
597,619	4/1884	Hasse et al. .	
3,017,304	1/1962	Burgeni .	154/54
3,403,681	10/1968	Hoej et al. .	128/290
3,441,023	4/1969	Rijssenbeek .	128/287
3,592,194	7/1971	Duncan .	128/287
3,670,731	6/1972	Harmon .	
3,766,922	10/1973	Krusko .	
3,860,002	1/1975	Kolbach .	
3,908,659	9/1975	Wehrmeyer et al. .	128/287
3,927,673	12/1975	Taylor .	128/287
3,965,904	6/1976	Mesek et al. .	128/284
4,027,672	6/1977	Karami .	128/284
4,102,340	7/1978	Mesek et al. .	
4,213,459	7/1980	Sigi et al. .	128/287
4,217,901	8/1980	Bradstreet et al. .	128/290 R
4,232,674	11/1980	Melican .	
4,259,387	3/1981	Mesek .	428/167

4,276,338	6/1981	Ludwa et al. .	428/137
4,285,342	8/1981	Mesek .	604/375
4,333,463	6/1982	Holtman .	128/287
4,443,512	4/1984	Delvaux .	428/162
4,449,979	5/1984	Holtman .	604/379
4,496,358	1/1985	Karami et al. .	604/379
4,559,050	12/1985	Iskra .	604/368
4,560,372	12/1985	Pieniak .	604/369
4,585,448	4/1986	Enloe .	
4,610,678	9/1986	Weisman et al. .	
4,654,039	7/1986	Brandt et al. .	
4,673,402	6/1987	Weisman et al. .	

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

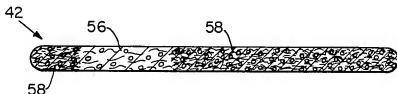
1128704	8/1982	Canada .
0062495A2	10/1982	European Pat. Off. .
0158914A2	10/1985	European Pat. Off. .
2124907A	2/1984	United Kingdom .

Primary Examiner—James J. Bell
 Attorney, Agent, or Firm—Steven W. Miller; John M. Pollaro; Fredrick H. Braun

[57] ABSTRACT

An absorbent article wherein the deposition region of its absorbent member comprises a storage zone and an acquisition zone having a lower average density and a lower average basis weight per unit area than the storage zone. The acquisition zone is positioned toward the front of either the absorbent member or the absorbent article so that the acquisition zone may most effectively and efficiently rapidly acquire discharged liquids. The absorbent member also comprises a mixture of hydrophilic fibrous material and discrete particles of absorbent gelling material to enhance the absorbent capacity of the absorbent member.

78 Claims, 3 Drawing Sheets



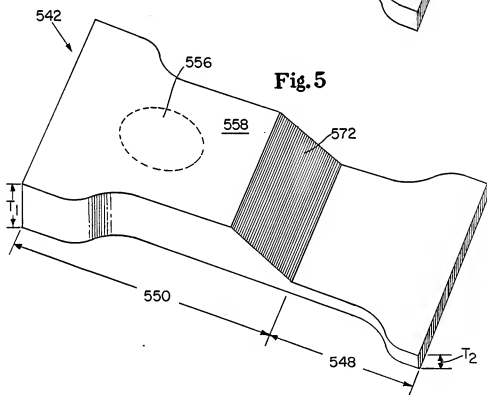
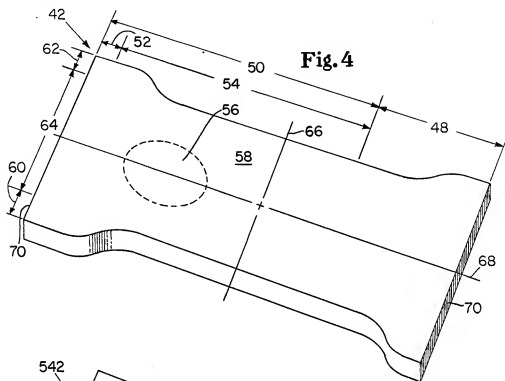


Fig. 6

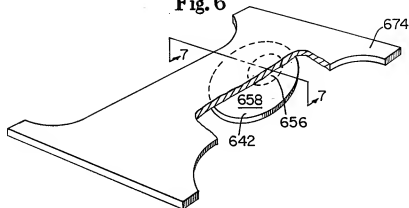


Fig. 7

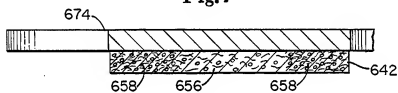
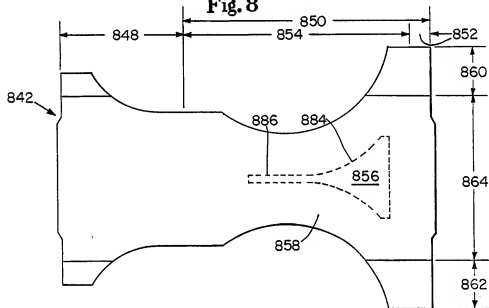


Fig. 8



HIGH DENSITY ABSORBENT MEMBERS HAVING LOWER DENSITY AND LOWER BASIS WEIGHT ACQUISITION ZONES

FIELD OF THE INVENTION

This invention relates to absorbent members having a mixture of hydrophilic fibrous material and discrete particles of an absorbent gelling material. More particularly, the invention relates to a relatively high density absorbent member having a relatively lower average density and lower average basis weight acquisition zone positioned in the area of typical liquid deposition to more quickly acquire and distribute liquids within the absorbent member.

BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION

Absorbent articles such as disposable diapers, adult incontinent pads, sanitary napkins and the like are generally provided with absorbent members to receive and retain body liquids. In order for such absorbent articles to function efficiently, the absorbent members must quickly acquire body liquids into the structure from the point of application and subsequently distribute the body liquids within and throughout the absorbent member to provide maximum leakage containment. In addition, the absorbent members should be capable of retaining liquids when placed under loads. Prior art attempts to improve the effectiveness of such absorbent members have included distributing particles of absorbent gelling material throughout or in portions of the absorbent member. For example, Procter & Gamble; European Patent Application EP-A-122,042; published Oct. 17, 1984 discloses absorbent members wherein particles of absorbent gelling material (hydrogel) are dispersed in an air-laid web of hydrophilic fibrous material and compressed to a particular density. In addition, United States patent application Ser. No. 734,426; filed May 15, 1985, by Paul T. Weisman, Dawn L. Houghton and Dale A. Gellert discloses a dual-layer absorbent core wherein an absorbent acquisition layer overlays a lower fluid storage layer that consists essentially of a uniform combination of hydrophilic fibrous material and discrete particles of absorbent gelling material.

Absorbent gelling materials are polymeric materials which are capable of absorbing large quantities of liquids relative to their weight such as water and body wastes, and which are further capable of retaining such absorbed liquids under moderate pressures. These absorption characteristics of absorbent gelling materials make them especially useful for incorporation into absorbent articles such as disposable diapers, adult incontinent pads, sanitary napkins and the like. However, in spite of the extremely high absorption capacities of such absorbent gelling materials, their performance when used in disposable absorbent articles has still not been optimized.

The effectiveness of absorbent gelling materials in disposable absorbent articles is quite dependent upon the form, position, and/or manner in which the particles of absorbent gelling material are incorporated into the absorbent member. In some cases, for example, the effectiveness of absorbent members containing particles of absorbent gelling material can be adversely affected by a phenomenon called gel blocking. The term gel blocking describes a situation that occurs when a particle of absorbent gelling material is wetted, the surface of the particles swelling so as to inhibit liquid trans-

sion into the interior of the absorbent member. Wetting of the interior of the absorbent member, therefore, takes place via a very slow diffusion process. In practical terms, this means that acquisition of liquids by the absorbent member is much slower than the discharge of the liquid to be absorbed, and leakage from the absorbent article may take place well before the particles of absorbent gelling material in the absorbent member are fully saturated or before the liquid can diffuse or wick past the "blocking" particles into the rest of the absorbent member. The slow acquisition rate also fails to take advantage of the rapid wicking of liquids to other parts of the absorbent member provided by a densified absorbent member containing particles of absorbent gelling material.

Thus, it would be advantageous to provide an absorbent member that more quickly acquires and distributes liquids within itself while minimizing gel blocking during the liquid acquisition phase. It is therefore a primary objective of the present invention to provide absorbent members which are especially effective and efficient in their use of absorbent gelling materials.

SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

The present invention provides an absorbent article such as disposable diapers, incontinent pads, sanitary napkins or the like that has an absorbent member that is suitable for acquiring and containing liquids in an especially effective and efficient manner. Such an absorbent article comprises a liquid pervious topsheet, a liquid impervious backsheet, and an absorbent member positioned between the topsheet and the backsheet.

The absorbent member has a deposition region which comprises a storage zone of a relatively high density and high basis weight to absorb and retain liquids acquired by the absorbent member and an acquisition zone of a relatively lower average density and lower average basis weight than the storage zone to quickly acquire and temporarily hold discharged liquids. The absorbent member also comprises a mixture of hydrophilic fibrous material and discrete particles of absorbent gelling material.

In accordance with one aspect of the present invention, the acquisition zone is positioned toward the front of the absorbent member so that the acquisition zone may be positioned in the area of typical liquid deposition. The acquisition zone is also sized so that the top surface area of the acquisition zone comprises less than about 50% of the top surface area of the front section of the absorbent member.

In accordance with another aspect of the present invention, the ratio of the average density of the storage zone to the average density of the acquisition zone is preferably about equal to or greater than 1.25:1, and most preferably about equal to or greater than 2:1. The acquisition zone preferably has a density of from about 0.05 to about 0.15 g/cm³; the acquisition zone also preferably having a uniform density and uniform basis weight throughout.

In a preferred embodiment of the present invention, a relatively high gel strength absorbent gelling material is mixed with hydrophilic fibrous material to not only minimize gel blocking but also to help maintain an open capillary structure within the absorbent member to enhance planar transport of liquids away from the area of typical liquid deposition to the rest of the absorbent member. The mixture of hydrophilic fibrous material

and discrete particles of absorbent gelling material preferably have a fiber-to-particulate weight ratio of from about 40:60 to about 98:2, more preferably about 50:50 to about 91:9.

The present invention also relates to dual-layer absorbent cores of the type having an absorbent acquisition core which consists essentially of hydrophilic fibrous material and an absorbent member which consists of a mixture of hydrophilic fibrous material and discrete particles of absorbent gelling material. The absorbent member has a top surface area which is from about 0.25 to about 1.0 times the top surface area of the absorbent acquisition core. The absorbent member is further positioned relative to the backsheet of the absorbent article in which it is positioned such that at least about 75% of the absorbent gelling material is found within the front two-thirds portion of the absorbent article. The acquisition zone of the absorbent member is also positioned relative to the backsheet such that it is completely positioned within the front two-thirds portion of the absorbent article.

DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS

While the specification concludes with claims which particularly point out and distinctly claim the subject matter regarded as forming the present invention, it is believed the invention will be better understood from the following description taken in conjunction with the accompanying drawings in which:

FIG. 1 is a plan view of a disposable diaper embodiment of the present invention wherein most of the topsheet has been cut-away to more clearly show the underlying absorbent member of the diaper;

FIG. 2 is a longitudinal sectional view of only the absorbent member of the disposable diaper taken along sectional line 2—2 of FIG. 1;

FIG. 3 is a transverse sectional view of only the absorbent member of the disposable diaper taken along sectional line 3—3 of FIG. 1;

FIG. 4 is a perspective view of the absorbent member of the disposable diaper shown in FIG. 1;

FIG. 5 is a perspective view of an alternative embodiment of the absorbent member of the present invention;

FIG. 6 is a perspective view of a dual-layer absorbent core having a further alternative embodiment of the absorbent member of the present invention;

FIG. 7 is a sectional view of the dual-layer absorbent core of FIG. 6 taken along sectional line 7—7 of FIG. 6; and

FIG. 8 is a plan view of a still further alternative embodiment of the absorbent member of the present invention.

DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF THE INVENTION

The absorbent members of the present invention will be described herein in relationship to their use in disposable absorbent articles; however, it should be understood that the potential application of the absorbent members of the present invention should not be limited to disposable absorbent articles. As used herein, the term "disposable absorbent article" refers to articles which absorb and contain body exudates and more specifically refers to articles which are placed against or in proximity to the body of the wearer to absorb and contain the various exudates discharged from the body, and which are intended to be discarded after a single use

(i.e., they are not intended to be laundered or otherwise restored or reused). A preferred embodiment of a disposable absorbent article, diaper 20, is shown in FIG. 1. As used herein, the term "diaper" refers to a garment generally worn by infants and incontinent persons that is worn about the lower torso of the wearer. It should be understood, however, that the present invention is also applicable to other disposable absorbent articles such as incontinent briefs, sanitary napkins, and the like.

FIG. 1 is a plan view of the diaper 20 of the present invention in its flat-out, uncontracted state (i.e., with all elastic induced contraction removed) with portions of the structure being cut-away to more clearly show the construction of the diaper 20 and with the portion of the diaper 20 which contacts the wearer facing the viewer. The diaper 20 is shown in FIG. 1 to have a front waistband region 22, a back waistband region 24, a crotch region 26 and a periphery 28 which is defined by the outer edges of the diaper in which the longitudinal edges are designated 30 and the end edges are designated 32. The diaper additionally has a transverse centerline which is designated 34 and a longitudinal centerline which is designated 36.

The diaper 20 comprises a liquid pervious topsheet 38; a liquid impervious backsheet 40; an absorbent member 42; and elastic members 44. While the topsheet 38, the backsheet 40, the absorbent member 42, and the elastic members 44 may be assembled in a variety of well known configurations, a preferred diaper configuration is described generally in U.S. Pat. No. 3,860,003 entitled "Contractable Side Portions for Disposable Diaper", which issued to K. B. Buell on Jan. 14, 1975, and which patent is incorporated herein by reference.

FIG. 1 shows a preferred embodiment of the diaper 20 in which the topsheet 38 and the backsheet 40 are co-extensive and have length and width dimensions generally larger than those of the absorbent member 42. The topsheet 38 is associated with and superimposed on the backsheet 40 thereby forming the periphery 28 of the diaper 20. The periphery 28 defines the outer perimeter or the edges of the diaper 20. The periphery 28 comprises the end edges 32 and longitudinal edges 30.

The diaper 20 has front and back waistband regions 22 and 24 respectively, extending from the end edges 32 of the diaper periphery 28 toward the transverse centerline 34 of the diaper a distance from about 2% to about 10%, preferably about 5%, of the length of the diaper 20. The waistband regions comprise those upper portions of the diaper 20, which when worn, encircle the waist of the wearer. The crotch region 26 is that portion of the diaper 20 between the waistband regions 22 and 24, and comprises that portion of the diaper 20 which, when worn, is positioned between the legs of the wearer and covers the lower torso of the wearer. Thus, the crotch region 26 defines the area of typical liquid deposition for a diaper 20 or other disposable absorbent article.

The topsheet 38 is compliant, soft feeling, and non-irritating to the wearer's skin. Further, the topsheet 38 is liquid pervious permitting liquids to readily penetrate through its thickness. A suitable topsheet 38 may be manufactured from a wide range of materials, such as porous foams, reticulated foams, apertured plastic films, natural fibers (e.g., wood or cotton fibers), synthetic fibers (e.g., polyester or polypropylene fibers) or from a combination of natural and synthetic fibers. Preferably, the topsheet 38 is made of a hydrophobic material to

isolate the wearer's skin from liquids in the absorbent member 42.

A particularly preferred topsheet 38 comprises staple length polypropylene fibers having a denier of about 1.5, such as Hercules type 151 polypropylene marketed by Hercules, Inc. of Wilmington, Del. As used herein, the term "staple length fibers" refers to those fibers having a length of at least about 15.9 mm (0.62 inches).

There are a number of manufacturing techniques which may be used to manufacture the topsheet 38. For example, the topsheet 38 may be woven, non-woven, spunbonded, carded, or the like. A preferred topsheet is carded, and thermally bonded by means well known to those skilled in the fabrics art. Preferably, the topsheet 38 has a weight from about 18 to about 25 grams per square meter, a minimum dry tensile strength of at least about 400 grams per centimeter in the machine direction and a wet tensile strength of at least about 55 grams per centimeter in the cross machine direction.

The backsheets 40 are impervious to liquids and is preferably manufactured from a thin plastic film, although other flexible liquid impervious materials may also be used. The backsheets 40 prevent the exudates absorbed and contained in the absorbent member 42 from wetting articles which contact the diaper 20 such as bed sheets and undergarments. Preferably, the backsheets 40 is polyethylene film having a thickness of from about 0.012 mm (0.5 mil) to about 0.051 centimeters (2.0 mils), although other flexible, liquid impervious materials may be used. As used herein, the term "flexible" refers to materials which are compliant and which will readily conform to the general shape and contours of the wearer's body.

A suitable polyethylene film is manufactured by Monsanto Chemical Corporation and marketed in the trade as Film No. 8020. The backsheets 40 is preferably embossed and/or matte finished to provide a more clothlike appearance. Further, the backsheets 40 may permit vapors to escape from the absorbent member 42 while still preventing exudates from passing through the backsheets 40.

The size of the backsheets 40 is dictated by the size of the absorbent member 42 and the exact diaper design selected. In a preferred embodiment, the backsheets 40 has a modified hourglass-shape extending beyond the absorbent member 42 a minimum distance of at least about 1.3 centimeters to about 2.5 centimeters (about 0.5 to about 1.0 inch) around the entire diaper periphery 28.

The topsheet 38 and the backsheets 40 are associated together in any suitable manner. As used herein, the term "associated" encompasses configurations whereby the topsheet 38 is directly joined to the backsheets 40 by affixing the topsheet 38 directly to the backsheets 40, and configurations whereby the topsheet 38 is indirectly joined to the backsheets 40 by affixing the topsheet 38 to intermediate members which in turn are affixed to the backsheets 40. In a preferred embodiment, the topsheet 38 and the backsheets 40 are affixed directly to each other in the diaper periphery 28 by attachment means (not shown) such as an adhesive or any other attachment means as known in the art. For example, a uniform continuous layer of adhesive, a patterned layer of adhesive, or an array of separate lines or spots of adhesive may be used to affix the topsheet 38 to the backsheets 40.

Tape tab fasteners 46 are typically applied to the back waistband region 24 of the diaper 20 to provide a fastening means for holding the diaper on the wearer. Only one of the tape tab fasteners is shown in FIG. 1. The

tape tab fasteners 46 can be any of those well known in the art, such as the fastening tape disclosed in U.S. Pat. No. 3,848,594 issued to K. B. Buell on Nov. 19, 1974, which patent is incorporated herein by reference. These tape tab fasteners 46 or other diaper fastening means, such as pins, are typically applied near the corners of the diaper 20.

The elastic members 44 are disposed adjacent the periphery 28 of the diaper 20, preferably along each longitudinal edge 30 so that the elastic members 44 tend to draw and hold the diaper 20 against the legs of the wearer. Alternatively, the elastic members 44 may be disposed adjacent either or both of the end edges 32 of the diaper 20 to provide a waistband as well as or rather than leg cuffs. For example, a suitable waistband is disclosed in U.S. Pat. No. 4,515,595 issued to David J. Kievit and Thomas F. Osterhage on May 7, 1985, which patent is herein incorporated by reference. In addition, a method and apparatus suitable for manufacturing a disposable diaper having elastically contractible elastic members is described in U.S. Pat. No. 4,081,301 entitled "Method and Apparatus for Continuously Attaching Discrete, Stretched Elastic Strands to Predetermined Isolated Portions of Disposable Absorbent Products" which issued to K. B. Buell on Mar. 28, 1978 and which patent is incorporated herein by reference.

The elastic members 44 are secured to the diaper 20 in an elastically contractible condition so that in a normally unrestrained configuration, the elastic members 44 effectively contract or gather the diaper 20. The elastic members 44 can be secured in an elastically contractible condition in at least two ways. For example, the elastic members 44 may be stretched and secured while the diaper 20 is in an uncontracted condition. Alternatively, the diaper 20 may be contracted, for example, by pleating, and the elastic members 44 secured and connected to the diaper 20 while the elastic members 44 are in their unrelaxed or unstretched condition.

In the embodiment illustrated in FIG. 1, the elastic members 44 extend essentially the entire length of the diaper 20 in the crotch region 26. Alternatively the elastic members 44 may extend the entire length of the diaper 20, or any other length suitable to provide an elastically contractible line. The length of the elastic members 44 is dictated by the diapers' design.

The elastic members 44 may take a multitude of configurations. For example, the width of the elastic members 44 may be varied from about 0.25 millimeters (0.01 inches) to about 25 millimeters (1.0 inch) or more; the elastic members 44 may comprise a single strand of elastic material or may comprise several parallel or non-parallel strands of elastic material; or the elastic members 44 may be rectangular or curvilinear. Still further, the elastic members 44 may be affixed to the diaper in any of several ways which are known in the art. For example, the elastic members 44 may be ultrasonically bonded, heat and pressure sealed into the diaper 20 using a variety of bonding patterns or the elastic members 44 may simply be glued to the diaper 20.

The absorbent member 42 is positioned between the topsheet 38 and the backsheets 40 to form the diaper 20. The absorbent member 42 is generally compressible, conformable, non-irritating to the wearer's skin, and capable of absorbing and retaining liquids and certain body exudates. It should be understood that for purposes of this invention that an absorbent member is not necessarily limited to a single layer or sheet of material.

Thus, the absorbent member 42 may actually comprise laminates or combinations of several sheets or webs of the requisite types of materials as hereinafter described. Thus as used herein, the term "member" includes the term "members" or "layers" or "layered."

FIG. 4 is a perspective view of a preferred embodiment of the absorbent member 42 of the present invention. The absorbent member 42 is shown in FIG. 4 to comprise a back section 48 and a front section 50. The front section 50 is shown to have an end region 52 and a deposition region 54. The deposition region 54 comprises an acquisition zone 56 (shown by the dotted lines) and a storage zone 58. Further, the front section 50 is transversely divided into three regions comprising two transversely spaced ear regions 60 and 62 respectively, and a central region 64. The absorbent member 42 additionally has a transverse centerline which is designated 66 and a longitudinal centerline which is designated 68.

The absorbent member 42 has a back section 48 and a front section 50 that is contiguous with the back section 48. The back section 48 and the front section 50 of the absorbent member 42 extend respectively from the end edges 70 of the absorbent member 42 toward the transverse centerline 66, the front portion 50 extending a distance from about one half to about three-fourths, preferably about two-thirds, of the length of the absorbent member 42. The front section 50 is preferably greater than one half of the total length of the absorbent member 42 so that it will encompass all of the area of typical liquid deposition of an absorbent member 42 when it is placed in a diaper or other absorbent article.

The front portion 50 has an end region 52 and a deposition region 54. The end region 52 comprises that portion of the front section 50 extending from the respective end edge 70 of the absorbent member 42 toward the transverse centerline 66 a distance from about 2% to about 10%, preferably about 5%, of the length of the absorbent member 42. The deposition region 54 comprises that portion of the front portion 50 that is contiguous with and positioned between the end region 52 and the back section 48 and encompasses the area of typical liquid deposition of the absorbent member 42.

The front portion 50 further has two transversely spaced ear regions 60 and 62 respectively, and a central region 64 disposed intermediate said ear regions 60 and 62. The ear regions 60 and 62 comprise those portions which generally extend from the longitudinal edges 30 of the periphery 28 toward the longitudinal centerline a distance from about one-tenth to about one-third of the width of the absorbent member 42. Thus, the ear regions 60 and 62 are those portions that engage the side marginal portions of the wearer's waist and torso, whereas the central region 64 engages the medial portion of the wearer's waist and torso. The central region thus defines the transverse area of typical liquid deposition.

The absorbent member 42 may be manufactured in a wide variety of sizes and shapes (e.g., rectangular, hourglass, asymmetrical, etc.) and from a wide variety of materials. The total absorbent capacity of the absorbent member 42 should, however, be compatible with the design liquid loading for the intended use of the absorbent article or diaper. Further, the size and absorbent capacity of the absorbent member 42 may be varied to accommodate wearers ranging from infants through adults. The absorbent member 42 preferably comprises a mixture of hydrophilic fibrous material and particular

amounts of discrete particles of absorbent gelling material.

Various types of hydrophilic fibrous material can be used in the absorbent member 42. Any type of hydrophilic fibrous material which is suitable for use in conventional absorbent products are suitable for use in the absorbent member 42 of the present invention. Specific examples of such hydrophilic fibrous material include cellulose fibers, rayon, and polyester fibers. Other examples of suitable hydrophilic fibrous materials include hydrophilized hydrophobic fibers, such as surfactant-treated or silica-treated thermoplastic fibers. For reasons of availability and cost, cellulose fibers, in particular wood pulp fibers which are also referred to as airlaid, are preferred.

As used herein, the term "hydrophilic" describes fibers or the surfaces of fibers which are wetted by the liquids deposited onto the fibers. The state of the art respecting wetting of materials allows definition of hydrophilicity (and wetting) in terms of contact angles and the surface tension of the liquids and solids involved. This is discussed in detail in *The American Chemical Society publication entitled Contact Angle, Wettability, and Adhesion* edited by Robert F. Gould and copyrighted in 1964. A fiber or surface of a fiber is said to be wetted by a liquid either when the contact angle between the liquid and the fiber or surface is less than 90° or when the liquid will tend to spread spontaneously across the surface; both conditions normally coexist.

In addition to hydrophilic fibrous material, the absorbent member 42 also contains particular amounts of discrete particles of absorbent gelling material. Such absorbent gelling material may be inorganic or organic compounds capable of absorbing liquids and retaining them under moderate pressures.

Suitable absorbent gelling materials can be inorganic materials such as silica gels or organic compounds such as cross-linked polymers. Cross-linking may be by covalent, ionic, van der Waals, or hydrogen bonding. Examples of absorbent gelling material polymers include polyacrylamides, polyvinyl alcohol, ethylene maleic anhydride copolymers, polyvinyl ethers, hydroxypropyl cellulose, carboxymethyl cellulose, polyvinylmorpholinone, polymers and copolymers of vinyl sulfonic acid, polyacrylates, polyacrylamides, polyvinyl pyridine and the like. Other suitable hydrogels are disclosed in Assarson et al., U.S. Pat. No. 3,901,236 issued Aug. 26, 1975, which patent is incorporated herein by reference. Particularly preferred polymers for use in the absorbent member are hydrolyzed, acrylonitrile grafted starch, acrylic acid grafted starch, polyacrylates and isobutylene maleic anhydride copolymers, or mixtures thereof.

Processes for preparing hydrogels are disclosed in Masuda et al., U.S. Pat. No. 4,076,663, issued Feb. 28, 1978; Tsubakimoto et al., U.S. Pat. No. 4,286,082, issued Aug. 25, 1981; and further in U.S. Pat. Nos. 3,734,876, 3,661,815, 3,670,731, 3,664,343, 3,783,871 and Belgium Pat. No. 785,850, which patents are all incorporated herein by reference.

Absorbent gelling material used in the absorbent member 42 is in the form of discrete "particles". Particles of absorbent gelling material can be of any desired shape, e.g., spiral or semi-spiral, cubic, rod-like, polyhedral, etc. Shapes having a large greatest dimension/smallest dimension ratio, like needles, flakes, and fibers, are also contemplated for use herein. Conglomerates of

particles of absorbent gelling material may also be used in the absorbent member 42.

Although the absorbent gelling material-containing absorbent member is expected to perform well with particles having a size varying over a wide range, other considerations may preclude the use of very small or very large particles. For reasons of industrial hygiene, average particle sizes smaller than about 30 microns are less desirable. Particles having a smallest dimension larger than about 2 millimeters may also cause a feeling of grittiness in the absorbent member, which is undesirable from a consumer aesthetics standpoint. Furthermore, the rate of fluid absorption is affected by particle size. Larger particles have very much reduced rates of absorption. Preferred for use herein are particles having an average size of from about 50 microns to about 1 millimeter. "Particle size" as used herein means the weighted average of the smallest dimension of the individual particles.

Although most absorbent gelling materials will perform well in the absorbent member 42 of the present invention, absorbent gelling materials having high gel strength are particularly useful. Gel strength must be such that the particles of absorbent gelling material do not deform and fill to an unacceptable degree the capillary void space in the absorbent member 42, thereby inhibiting both absorbent capacity of the structure and fluid distribution throughout the structure.

Gel strength refers to the tendency of the particles of absorbent gelling material to deform or spread under stress once the particles absorb liquids. For a given type of absorbent gelling material, gel strength will generally decrease as the gel volume increases. It has been found that it is desirable to utilize an absorbent member 42 whose polymer materials have as high a gel strength as possible consistent with the realization of absorbent gelling materials of acceptably high gel volume.

It has been found that gel strength, i.e. gel deformation tendency, (in the context of absorbent gelling materials incorporated into absorbent members and absorbent articles) correlates directly with the shear modulus of the absorbent gelling material. Accordingly, polymer materials of absorbent gelling material having sufficient gel strength can be appropriately characterized by specifying gel strength in terms of the shear modulus of the particles of absorbent gelling material.

Shear modulus can be conventionally measured, for example, by a procedure which involves the use of a stress rheometer to determine the ratio of (a) stress applied to a given sample versus (b) the resulting strain exhibited by the sample. The absorbent gelling material sample tested in this manner is swollen to its gel volume with synthetic urine. Using a procedure described in greater detail hereinafter, the stress/strain ratio is determined. The shear modulus of the resulting sample in dynes/cm² is then subsequently calculated from this ratio. Absorbent gelling materials which have been found to be particularly useful in the present invention exhibit a shear modulus of at least about 2,000 dynes/cm². More preferably, the absorbent gelling materials have a shear modulus within the range of about 2500 to about 92,000 dynes/cm² and most preferably of from about 5,000 to about 35,000 dynes/cm².

Without wishing to be bound by any particular theory, it is believed that absorbent gelling materials having high gel strength as reflected in their shear modulus values will resist deformation upon fluid absorption and will have a reduced tendency to flow into the void

spaces between fibers. Thus, high gel strength absorbent gelling materials may actually serve to maintain separation of the individual fibers of the hydrophilic fibrous material. Such fiber separation improves both the wicking and the absorbent capacity of such absorbent members. Low gel strength materials, on the other hand, merely flow into the void spaces between the fibers upon fluid absorption and can thereby actually reduce the acquisition rate and the absorbent capacity of the absorbent members and absorbent articles into which they are incorporated.

Gel strength of absorbent gelling materials is quantified by means of determining the shear modulus of a sample of the swollen particles. Shear modulus is determined using a stress rheometer which comprises a circular lower plate onto which the swollen particle sample is placed. A truncated conical upper element having the same projected surface area as the area of the lower circular plate is positioned above the circular lower plate. This upper element is lowered into the mass of swollen particle material on the circular lower plate and is positioned at the proper gap relative to the circular lower plate. This gap corresponds to the point at which an untruncated cone would contact the lower plate.

An oscillating torque (stress) is applied torsionally to the conical element, and the resulting angular displacement of the cone is determined as a function of the applied torque.

The sample being tested is swollen to its gel volume in synthetic urine. Synthetic Urine is typically 15.0 parts of 1% Triton X-100, 60.0 parts of NaCl, 1.8 parts of CaCl₂ · 2H₂O, and 3.6 parts of MgCl₂ · 6H₂O, diluted to 6000 parts with distilled H₂O. The resulting solution has an absorbance of about 0.25 at its absorbance maximum of 617 nm.

Excess free synthetic urine is removed from the sample by blotting, and approximately 1.5 cc of the swollen material is placed in the gap between the lower circular plate and the upper conical element of the rheometer. This mass is usually formed from an agglomeration of swollen particles which have unswollen particle dimensions less than 710 microns. Spherical particles should be ground to form irregular shaped particles before testing.

Stress and strain measurements are taken under the following conditions:

Parameter	Value
Type of Rheometer	Sangamo Visco-elastic Analyzer
Configuration	Oscillating Cone and Plate
Plate Radius	2.5 cm
Cone Radius	2.5 cm
(Edge to vertex)	
Cone Angle*	43.6 milliradians
Oscillation Frequency	1.0 Hertz
Strain Amplitude	2.5%
Sample Temperature	21.4° C.

*Angle between surface of the lower plate and the surface of the cone i.e. (P/V) - semi-vertical angle).

Under these conditions, an oscillatory torque (stress) is applied via the upper conical element to the swollen particles. This results in an oscillatory response (strain) of the sample which is reflected by the magnitude of the angle through which the conical element rotates in response to the applied torque. The shear modulus of the particles is calculated from the ratio of (i) the applied stress to (ii) the amplitude of the in-phase component of the resultant strain.

For the particular cone/plate geometry employed in this testing, the ratio of stress (g-cm) to strain (milliradians) is converted to shear modulus (dynes/cm²) using the following formula:

Shear modulus =

$$\frac{3 \times 981 \times \text{Cone Angle} \times \text{Cos(Phase Angle)} \times \text{Torque}}{2 \times \pi \times \text{Plate Radius}^3 \times \text{Strain}}$$

wherein the cone angle and strain are expressed in units of milliradians, the plate radius in units of cm and torque in units of g-cm. For absorbent gelling materials, the phase angle is close to zero and so the cosine of the phase angle is taken as unity. The factor 981 is that which converts g-cm to dyne-cm. Thus

$$\text{Shear Modulus (dynes/cm}^2\text{)} = 1308 \times \frac{\text{Torque (gm-cm)}}{\text{Strain (milliradians)}}$$

for the particular equipment used in this test method.

The relative amount of hydrophilic fibrous material and particles of absorbent gelling material used in the absorbent member 42 of the present invention can be most conveniently expressed in terms of a weight percentage of the absorbent member 42. The absorbent member 42 preferably contains from about 2% to about 60%, more preferably from about 10% to about 25% by weight, of the absorbent member 42 of absorbent gelling material. This concentration of absorbent gelling material can also be expressed in terms of a weight ratio of fiber to particulate. These ratios may range from about 40:60 to about 98:2. For most commercially available absorbent gelling materials, the optimum fiber-to-particulate weight ratio is in the range of from about 50:50 to about 91:9. Based on a cost/performance analysis, ratios of from about 75:25 to about 90:10 are most preferred for use in the absorbent member 42.

In addition, the particles of absorbent gelling material may be dispersed in various weight ratios throughout different regions and thicknesses of the absorbent member 42.

For example, the mixture of hydrophilic fibrous material and particles of absorbent gelling material may be disposed only in the deposition region 54 of the absorbent member 42 and not in the back section 48 or the end region 52. In addition, the acquisition zone 56 need not comprise the fiber/particulate mixture. While an acquisition zone 56 containing only hydrophilic fibrous material may work satisfactorily in rapidly acquiring liquids, such an embodiment is not preferred. When particles of an absorbent gelling material are maintained in the acquisition zone 56, especially high gel strength absorbent gelling materials, the particles help maintain an open capillary structure when the acquisition zone 56 is wetted so as to enhance planar transport of liquids away from the acquisition zone 56 to the rest of the absorbent member 42. Thus, the acquisition zone 56 preferably contains a uniformly distributed mixture of hydrophilic fibrous material and discrete particles of absorbent gelling material. It is most preferred that the particles are substantially uniformly dispersed throughout the entire absorbent member 42.

The deposition region 54 comprises an acquisition zone 56 and a storage zone 58 in liquid communication with at least a portion of the acquisition zone 56. The acquisition zone 56 comprises portions of the deposition region 54 designated by the dotted lines in FIG. 4. The storage zone 58 generally comprises the remainder of

the deposition region 54 and more preferably the remainder of the absorbent member 42.

It has been found that a relative capillarity difference between the acquisition zone 56 and the storage zone 58 is of importance in the overall efficiency and effectiveness of the absorbent member 42. While liquid capillarity can be defined in several ways (e.g., pore size, density, basis weight, etc.), the density and basis weight of the structure are the preferred parameters to define liquid capillarity in the absorbent member 42 of the present invention. Thus, the acquisition zone 56 must have both a relatively lower average density and lower average basis weight per unit area than the storage zone 48 to establish the preferred capillary force gradient between them. Thus, the ratio of the average density of the storage zone 58 to the average density of the acquisition zone 56 should preferably be about equal to or greater than about 1.25:1, more preferably about 1.5:1 and most preferably about 2:1.

Without wishing to be bound by theory, it is believed that the differential lower capillarity, the lower average density and lower average basis weight, of the acquisition zone 56 in comparison to the storage zone 58 is significant in achieving both a more optimized liquid acquisition rate into the absorbent member 42 and a relatively high liquid planar wicking rate throughout the absorbent member 42. When an absorbent member 42 having a mixture of hydrophilic fibrous material and particles of absorbent gelling material is densified to the densities approximating those of the storage zone 58, the liquid planar wicking rate becomes much faster. It is believed that densifying the absorbent member 42 results in better planar wicking of liquid throughout the absorbent member 42 (the x-y direction) because of the higher capillary force due to the smaller pore size of the densified fibers. Densifying the absorbent member 42 further results in a reduction in the bulk of the structure (which is desirable from a consumer standpoint for aesthetic reasons).

However, the densification of the absorbent member 42 also results in a reduction in the rate of liquid acquisition into the absorbent member 42 in the direction normal to planar wicking (i.e. the z-direction). It is believed that as higher concentrations of absorbent gelling material are located in the area of typical liquid deposition, a maximum gel blocking effect is achieved, thereby reducing the liquid acquisition rate. Thus, it is important to provide a means for delivering the liquid into the absorbent member 42 at a high rate. The acquisition zone 56 of lower average density and lower average basis weight per unit area than the densified absorbent member 42 or storage zone 58 provides such a means. The acquisition zone 56 has a smaller concentration of particles of absorbent gelling material in the area of typical liquid deposition, thereby reducing the incidence of gel blocking in this area during the liquid acquisition phase and thus improving the liquid acquisition rate.

The capillary force gradient created at the interface between the acquisition zone 56 and the storage area 58 also improves the containment characteristics of the absorbent member 42. Liquids deposited on the acquisition zone 56 tend to be acquired quickly into the structure by the action of the acquisition zone 56. Because the storage zone 58 has a higher capillarity than the acquisition zone 56, the acquired liquids tend to be drawn into the storage zone 58 and are then delivered to

the other portions of the storage zone 58 by the enhanced planar wicking rate achieved in the storage zone 58; the liquids being retained even under moderate pressure by the particles of absorbent gelling material in the storage zone 58. Thus, it has been found that an absorbent member 42 having an acquisition zone 56 having a lower average density and lower average basis weight per unit area than the storage zone 58 improves leakage containment by more quickly acquiring and distributing liquids into and throughout the absorbent member 42.

In addition, it is believed that the acquisition zone 56 provides an additional mechanism whereby an absorbent member 42 that has already been wetted may contain and more readily acquire further discharged liquids. A property of the particles of absorbent gelling material is that they expand when wetted. Thus when the absorbent member 42 is wetted, the particles of absorbent gelling material in both the acquisition zone 56 and the storage zone 58 expand. However, because there is a greater concentration of particles of absorbent gelling material in the higher average density and higher average basis weight storage zone 58, the storage zone 58 tends to expand to a greater thickness than the acquisition zone 56. Thus, if the acquisition zone 56 is laterally surrounded by the storage zone 58, a well or hole effect is created. This "well" is advantageous for second depositions of liquids because the liquids will tend to be drawn into the well because it is in effect a zero density acquisition area. This is especially helpful in the case of diapers for overnight use wherein the wearer sleeps on the stomach because gravity additionally tends to pull the later discharged liquids into the well whereupon they distribute into the acquisition zone 56 and are wicked into the storage zone 58. Thus, the acquisition zone 56 provides an additional advantage for wetted absorbent members.

The storage zone 58 is thus the relatively high capillarity (high density and high basis weight) portion of at least the deposition region 54. The primary functions of the storage zone 58 are to absorb discharged liquids that are either deposited directly onto the storage zone 58 or transferred to the storage zone 58 via the capillary force gradients established between the acquisition zone 56 and the storage zone 58, and to retain such liquids under the pressures encountered as a result of the wearer's movements. Preferably, the storage zone 58 consists essentially of the structure disclosed in European Patent Application EP-A-122,042 or the lower fluid storage layer disclosed in United States patent application Ser. No. 734,426, both of which are incorporated herein by reference, although other high capillarity structures may also be used.

The storage zone 58 preferably has a relatively high density and a high basis weight in relation to the acquisition zone 56. The density and basis weight values of the storage zone 58 include the weight of the particles of absorbent gelling material, such that the density and basis weight values will vary depending upon the amount of particles dispersed throughout the absorbent member 42. Thus, the storage zone 58 will generally have a density of from about 0.06 to about 0.4 g/cm³, and more preferably within the range of from about 0.09 to about 0.20 g/cm³ for an absorbent member 42 containing about 15% by weight of particles of absorbent gelling material. The basis weight of such a storage zone 58 can range from about 0.02 to about 0.186 g/cm², preferably from about 0.038 to about 0.12 g/cm². For an absorbent member 42 containing about

50% by weight of particles of absorbent gelling material, the density will typically range from about 0.1 to about 0.68 g/cm³ with a basis weight from about 0.034 to about 0.31 g/cm². The density of the storage zone 58 is calculated from its basis weight and caliper measured on newly unpacked, unfolded and dissected diapers. The caliper is measured using a standard guage with the sample under a "gentle" load of 10 g/cm². The basis weight is measured by die-cutting a certain size sample and weighing the sample on a standard scale, the weight and area of the sample determining the basis weight. (It should be noted that the density and basis weight values include the weight of the particles of absorbent gelling material.)

While the storage zone 58 may take on a number of sizes and shapes, it is preferred that the storage zone 58 comprises the portion of at least the deposition region 54 wherein there is no acquisition zone 56. (i.e. The entire deposition region 54 comprises a storage zone 58 except for the acquisition zone 56.) While the back section 48 and the end region 52 need not comprise storage zones, in the particularly preferred embodiments of the absorbent member 42 as shown in FIGS. 2, 3 and 4, the entire absorbent member 42 except for the acquisition zone 56 consists of one or more storage zones 58. In addition, while the storage zone 58 need not completely laterally surround the acquisition zone 56 (i.e. it is in liquid communication with at least a portion of the lateral area of the acquisition zone 56), in preferred embodiments of the present invention, the storage zone 58 laterally surrounds the acquisition zone 56 so as to take full advantage of the capillarity difference between them.

The acquisition zone 56 has a relatively lower capillarity and thus preferably a lower average density and a lower average basis weight per unit area than the storage zone 58. The acquisition zone 56 serves to quickly collect and temporarily hold discharged liquids. Since such liquids are generally discharged in gushes, the acquisition zone 56 must be able to quickly acquire and transport liquid by wicking from the point of liquid contact to other parts of the absorbent member 42. The acquisition zone 56 preferably has a density of from about 0.03 to about 0.24 g/cm³, more preferably from about 0.05 to about 0.15 g/cm³ for an absorbent member 42 containing about 15% by weight of particles of absorbent gelling material. The basis weight of such an acquisition zone 56 will preferably range from about 0.015 to about 0.1 g/cm² and more preferably from about 0.018 to about 0.06 g/cm². For an absorbent member 42 containing about 50% by weight of particles of absorbent gelling material, the density will typically range from about 0.05 to about 0.41 g/cm³ with a basis weight of from about 0.025 to about 0.17 g/cm². The density of the acquisition zone 56 is calculated from its basis weight and caliper measured on newly unpacked, unfolded and dissected diapers. The caliper is measured using a standard guage with the sample under a "gentle" load of 10 g/cm². The basis weight is measured by die-cutting a certain size sample and weighing the sample on a standard scale, the weight and area of the sample determining the basis weight. (The density and basis weight values include the weight of the particles of absorbent gelling material.)

While the acquisition zone 56 may conceivably have density and basis weight values equal to zero, i.e. a hole or void space, such an embodiment is not as preferred as an acquisition zone 56 having some minimal value of

density and basis weight. The transfer of liquids through the topsheet 38 has been found to be diminished in an absorbent member 42 having an acquisition zone 56 of zero density and basis weight due to the lack of intimate contact between any fibers of the acquisition zone 56 and the topsheet 38. Thus, liquid may tend to pool or collect on the topsheet 38 thereby creating a wet feeling for the wearer. Thus, it is preferred that the acquisition zone 56 have some minimum density and basis weight.

While the density and basis weight of the acquisition zone 56 may vary throughout its area and thickness, such an embodiment is also not preferred. The acquisition zone 56 preferably has a substantially uniform density and uniform basis weight throughout its area and thickness. This uniform density and basis weight provides a uniform capillary force gradient across the interface between the acquisition zone 56 and the storage zone 58 that provides even liquid transfer.

The shape, size and positioning of the acquisition zone 56 is of importance in determining the effectiveness of the resulting absorbent member 42 in rapidly acquiring discharged liquids. In accordance with the present invention, the acquisition zone 56 should be placed in a specific positional relationship with respect to the area of typical liquid deposition of the absorbent member 42. While portions of the acquisition zone 56 may be positioned in the back section 48 of the absorbent member 42, the acquisition zone 56 is preferably positioned generally in the front section 50 of the absorbent member 42 so that the acquisition zone 56 is positioned in the area of typical liquid deposition, i.e. the deposition region 54. Thus, the acquisition zone 56 is placed in the vicinity of the point of discharge of liquids so as to be capable of quickly acquiring such liquids at their contact zone.

The generally forward positioning of the acquisition zone 56 can be defined by specifying the percentage of the top surface area of the acquisition zone 56 which is found forward of particular points along the length of the absorbent member 42. While the positioning of the acquisition zone 56 can alternatively be defined with respect to the volume of the acquisition zone positioned forward of particular points, it has been found that the top surface area of the acquisition zone 56 is a more desirable definition because the top surface area actually defines the initial area available for liquid acquisition. In addition, since the thickness of the absorbent member 42 is preferably uniform in the deposition region 54 and the acquisition zone 56 has a generally rectangular cross-sectional area, the top surface area definition is equal to a volumetric definition in a preferred embodiment. Thus, the positioning of the acquisition zone 56 will be referenced throughout the specification as related to its top surface area. (i.e. The percentage of the top surface area of the acquisition zone positioned in a given area.)

Thus, in accordance with the present invention, at least a portion of the acquisition zone 56 must be placed in the deposition region 54, even though the remaining portion may be positioned anywhere in the absorbent member 42 including the back section 48 and the end regions 52. (It being understood that if plural acquisition zones are utilized, at least a portion of one of the acquisition zones must be positioned in the deposition region 54.) However, the acquisition zone 56 is preferably positioned relative to the absorbent member 42 such that the top surface area of the acquisition zone 56 is

completely positioned within the front section 50 of the absorbent member 42. More preferably, the acquisition zone 56 is positioned relative to the absorbent member 42 such that the top surface area of the acquisition zone 56 is completely positioned within the deposition region 54 of the absorbent member 42. Even more preferably, at least 30% of the top surface area of the acquisition zone 56 is positioned in the front half of the front section (approximately the front $\frac{1}{2}$ of the overall absorbent member 42) of the absorbent member 42.

The forward positioning of the acquisition zone 56 may alternatively be defined by specifying the percentage of the top surface area of the acquisition zone 56 that is found forward of particular points along the length of the diaper 20 or other absorbent article. Thus, the acquisition zone 56 is preferably positioned on the absorbent member 42 relative to the backsheet 40 such that at least a portion of the top surface area of the acquisition zone 56 is in the crotch region 26 of the diaper 20. More preferably, the acquisition zone 56 is positioned such that its top surface area is completely positioned in the front two-thirds portion of the diaper 20, most preferably in the front half portion of the diaper 20; the top surface area also most preferably being completely positioned in the crotch region 26 of the diaper 20. (As noted herein, "portions" of the diaper 20 or other absorbent article can be defined by reference to the top surface area of the unfolded diaper 20 or absorbent article found in front of a given point on the line which defines the length of the diaper 20).

For purposes of determining the positioning of such acquisition zone 56, the length of the absorbent member 42 or diaper 20 will be taken as the normal longest longitudinal dimension of the elongated structure. This normal longest dimension can be defined with respect to the structure as it is applied to the wearer. When worn, the opposing ends of the backsheet are fastened together so that the ends form a circle around the wearer's waist. The normal length of the absorbent member 42 or diaper 20 will thus be the length of the line running through the absorbent member 42 or diaper 20 from the point on the edge of it at the middle of the wearer's back waist, through the crotch, to the point on the opposite edge of the absorbent member 42 or diaper 20 at the middle of the wearer's front waist.

The top surface area of the acquisition zone 56 may be found using either of two techniques. The primary and simplest way is to place the absorbent member 42 on a standard light box, such as the transilluminator model manufactured by Aristo grid Lamp Products, Inc. The acquisition zone 56, because it has a lower average density and lower average basis weight than the surrounding storage zone 58, will appear lighter or brighter due to the fact that more light will be transmitted through the acquisition zone 56. The acquisition zone 56 can then be mapped onto paper having grids to measure the top surface area of the acquisition zone 56.

The alternative method comprises mapping the density profile of the absorbent member 42 to determine the top surface area of the acquisition zone 56. The absorbent member 42 is cut into samples having small areas. The density and basis weight of each of the samples are then calculated using the techniques discussed above. Thus, the relatively lower density and lower basis weight samples are charted against the relatively higher density and higher basis weight samples to measure the top surface area of the acquisition zone 56.

The acquisition zone 56 can be of any desired shape consistent with the absorbency requirements of the absorbent member 42 or diaper 20 including, for example, circular, rectangular, triangular, trapezoidal, oblong, hourglass-shaped, funnel-shaped, dog-bone-shaped or oval. Preferred shapes of the acquisition zone 56 are those that increase the perimeter of the interface between the acquisition zone 56 and the storage zone 58 so that the relative capillarity difference between the zones is fully utilized. In a preferred embodiment, the acquisition zone will be oval shaped having a top surface area of about 45 cm² (about 7in²).

In order to maintain a certain minimal absorbency level in the front section 50 of the absorbent member 42, the top surface area or volume of the storage zone 58 must comprise some minimal amount of the top surface area or volume of the front section 50. Thus, it has been found that the acquisition zone 56 should preferably comprise less than the entire top surface area and/or volume of the front section 50 of the absorbent member 42. (Since in a preferred embodiment the acquisition zone 56 is of generally uniform thickness and cross-sectional area, volume can be interchanged with top surface area as a definitional point.) The top surface area of the portion of the acquisition zone 56 positioned in the front section 50 of the absorbent member 42 preferably comprises less than about 50% of the top surface area of the front section 50. More preferably, the top surface area of the acquisition zone 56 comprises less than about 35% of the top surface area of the front section 50 of the absorbent member 42, with less than about 20% being especially preferred. In addition, the top surface area of the acquisition zone 56 preferably comprises less than about 50% of the top surface area of the deposition region 54, more preferably less than about 35%, and most preferably less than about 20%.

The acquisition zone 56 may also have a number of different cross-sectional areas and configurations including those wherein the area of portions of the acquisition zone 56 is less or greater than its top surface area (i.e., the acquisition zone 56 is smaller or wider below the top surface of the absorbent member 42). For example, the acquisition zone 56 may have conical, trapezoidal, T-shaped or rectangular cross-sectional areas. As shown in FIGS. 2 and 3, the acquisition zone 56 preferably has a rectangular cross-sectional area so as to provide a uniform acquisition zone 56.

In addition, the acquisition zone 56 need not comprise the entire thickness of the absorbent member 42, but may extend through only a fraction of its total thickness. The acquisition zone 56 may also have a different thickness than the surrounding storage zone 58. However, in a preferred embodiment as shown in FIGS. 2 and 3, the acquisition zone 56 preferably extends through the entire thickness of the absorbent member 42 and has a thickness equal to the thickness of the surrounding storage zone 58 in the deposition region 54.

While the acquisition zone 56 may be transversely positioned anywhere along the absorbent member 42, it has been found that the acquisition zone 56 functions the most efficiently when it is transversely centered within the front section 50 or the deposition region 54 of the absorbent member 42. Thus, the acquisition zone 56 is preferably centered about the longitudinal centerline 68 of the absorbent member 42. More preferably, the acquisition zone 56 is transversely positioned only in the central region 64 of the front section 50 or deposition region 54 of the absorbent member 42 such that none of

the acquisition zone 56 is located in the ear regions 60 and 62.

Such an absorbent member 42 is preferably made by airlaying a thickness profiled absorbent member-preform and then calendaring the absorbent member 42 in a fixed-gap calendar roll to effect densifying the absorbent member 42. The thickness profiled absorbent member 42 initially has areas of higher basis weight which define the storage zone 58 and of lower basis weight which define the acquisition zone 56. The absorbent member 42 is then calendared preferably to at least a uniform thickness in the deposition region. Thus, a lower average density and a lower average basis weight per unit area acquisition zone 56 is created relative to the higher average density and higher average basis weight storage zone 58. Additionally, discrete particles of absorbent gelling material are added to an air-entrained stream of fibers prior to their deposition onto the preform to affect uniform distribution of absorbent gelling material throughout the preformed absorbent member 42. Thus, the resultant absorbent member 42 contains a uniform mixture of hydrophilic fibrous material and discrete particles of absorbent gelling material.

In use, the diaper 20 is applied to a wearer, by positioning the back waistband region 24 under the wearer's back, and drawing the remainder of the diaper 20 between the wearer's legs so that the front waistband region 22 is positioned across the front of the wearer. The ends of the tape-tab fasteners 46 are then secured preferably to outwardly facing areas of the diaper 20. In use, disposable diapers or other absorbent articles having such absorbent members 42 having a relatively lower average density and lower average basis weight acquisition zone 56, tends to more quickly acquire liquids into the acquisition zone 56 and to distribute these liquids to the remaining portions of the absorbent member 42 and to remain dry or dryer due to the preferential capillarity between the storage zone and the acquisition zone 56 of the absorbent member 42. Thus, such an absorbent member 42 helps to alleviate leakage around the edges of such absorbent articles.

FIG. 5 shows an alternative embodiment of an absorbent member 542 of the present invention. As shown in FIG. 5, the front section 550 of the absorbent member 542 has a thickness, T1, greater than the thickness, T2, of the back section 548. The acquisition zone 56 is preferably of the same thickness, T1, as the storage zone 58 positioned in the front section 550 of the absorbent member 542; the front section 550 having a terraced character by virtue of the thickness difference between the front section 550 and the back section 548 and by virtue of the relatively steep slope formed by a density/basis weight transition zone which is designated 572. Preferably, T1 is at least about 1.5 times as great as T2 and preferably about 2.0 times as great as T2. In this preferred embodiment, about three-fourths of the absorbent material is disposed in the front section 550 of the absorbent member 542 thereby providing an absorbent member 542 wherein the front section 552 has high absorbent capacity as well as rapid acquisition characteristics.

FIGS. 6 and 7 show a further alternative embodiment of an absorbent member 642 of the present invention. An absorbent acquisition core 674 is positioned over the absorbent member 642 of the present invention to form a dual-layer absorbent core. An example of a similar dual-layer absorbent core is discussed in more detail in United States patent application Ser. No. 734,426 filed

by Paul T. Weisman, Dawn I. Houghton, and Dale A. Gellert on May 15, 1985, which is incorporated herein by reference.

The absorbent acquisition core 674 preferably consists essentially of hydrophilic fibrous material. This absorbent acquisition core 674 thus serves to quickly collect and temporarily hold discharged liquids and to transport such liquids by wicking from the point of initial contact to other parts of the absorbent acquisition core 674. Since the primary function of the absorbent acquisition core 674 is to receive liquids passing through the topsheet 38 and to transport such liquids to other areas of the absorbent acquisition core 674 and eventually onto the absorbent member 642, the absorbent acquisition core 674 can be substantially free of absorbent gelling material. Alternatively, the absorbent acquisition core 674 can contain particular amounts of absorbent gelling material. Thus, the absorbent acquisition core 674, for example, can contain up to about 50%, or preferably up to about 25% or 40%, by its weight of particles of absorbent gelling material. In the most preferred embodiments, the absorbent acquisition core contains up to about 8% by its weight of particles of absorbent gelling material. In some instances, the presence of particles of absorbent gelling material in the absorbent acquisition core 674 can actually serve to maintain its density within the optimum range to promote fluid distribution. The specific type of absorbent gelling material optionally used in the absorbent acquisition core 674 does not have to be the same as the type essentially employed in the absorbent member 642.

The shape, size and character, including capillarity of the absorbent acquisition core 674, is of some importance in determining the effectiveness of the resulting diaper 20 or other absorbent article. The absorbent acquisition core 674 in the unfolded configuration can be of any desired shape, for example, rectangular, oval, oblong, asymmetric or hourglass-shaped. The shape of the absorbent acquisition core 674 will frequently define the general shape of the resulting diaper 20. In preferred embodiments of the present invention as shown in FIG. 6, the absorbent acquisition core 674 will be hourglass-shaped and will be of a substantially uniform density within the range of from about 0.07 to about 0.20 g/cm³. Preferably, the core will have a basis weight ranging from about 0.007 to about 0.075 g/cm².

The absorbent acquisition core 674 may alternatively comprise a core acquisition zone (not shown) having a lower average density and a lower average basis weight than the remainder of the absorbent acquisition core 674. This core acquisition zone may have the same shape, positioning and characteristics as the acquisition zone 656 of the absorbent member 642, or it may have different shapes, positioning and/or characteristics. Preferably, the core acquisition zone of the absorbent acquisition core 674 overlays at least a portion of the acquisition zone 656 of the absorbent member 642, and more preferably the entire acquisition zone 656 of the absorbent member 642, so as to provide an overall acquisition zone extending throughout the entire thickness of the dual-layer absorbent core system.

The absorbent member 642 of the present invention need not be as large as the absorbent acquisition core 674 and, in fact, have a top surface area which is substantially smaller than the top surface area of the absorbent acquisition core 674. Generally, the absorbent member 674 will have a top surface area from about 0.25 to about 1.0 times that of the absorbent acquisition core 674.

Most preferably, the top surface area of the absorbent member 642 will be only from about 0.25 to about 0.75, and most preferably from about 0.3 to about 0.5, times that of the absorbent acquisition core 674.

The absorbent member 642 is preferably placed in a specific positional relationship with respect to the backsheet 40 and/or the absorbent acquisition core 674 in the diaper or other absorbent article. More particularly, the absorbent member 642 is positioned generally toward the front of the diaper so that absorbent gelling material is most effectively located to acquire and hold discharged liquids from the absorbent acquisition core 674.

The forward positioning of the absorbent member 642 can be defined by specifying the percent of total absorbent gelling material which is found forward of particular points along the length of the diaper or other absorbent article. Thus, in accordance with the present invention, the absorbent member 642 is positioned relative to the backsheet and/or the absorbent acquisition core such that (1) at least about 75% of the total absorbent gelling material in the absorbent member 642 is found within the front two-thirds portion of the diaper or other absorbent article, and (2) at least about 55% of the total absorbent gelling material in the absorbent member 642 is found within the front half portion of the diaper or other absorbent article. More preferably, the absorbent member 642 is positioned relative to the backsheet 38 and/or the absorbent acquisition core 674 such that at least about 90% of the total absorbent gelling material in the absorbent member 642 is found in the front two-thirds portion and at least about 60% of the total absorbent gelling material is found in the front half portion of the diaper or other absorbent article. (As noted, for purposes of the present invention, "portions" of the diaper or other absorbent article can be defined by reference to the top surface area of the unfolded diaper 20 or absorbent article found in front of a given point on the line which defines the length of the diaper 20 or absorbent article).

In the usual instance when the absorbent acquisition core 674 generally defines the shape of the diaper or other absorbent article, the normal length of the backsheet 38 will be approached by the longest longitudinal dimension of the absorbent acquisition core 674. In such instances, the positioning of the absorbent member 642 can also be defined with respect to its location toward the front portion of the absorbent acquisition core 674. However, in some applications (e.g. adult incontinence articles) wherein bulk reduction or minimum cost are important, the absorbent acquisition core would not take on the general shape of the diaper or incontinence structure. Rather, it would be generally located to cover only the genital region of the wearer and could in this case have approximately the same top surface area as the absorbent member 642. In this instance, both the absorbent acquisition core 674 and the co-extensive absorbent member 642 would be located toward the front of the article as defined by only the backsheet 38 such that the requisite percentages of absorbent gelling material would be found in the front two-thirds and front half sections respectively of the diaper or other absorbent article.

The absorbent member 642 of the dual-layer absorbent core can be of any desired shape consistent with comfortable fit including, for example, circular, rectangular, trapezoidal, oblong, hourglass-shaped, dog-bone-

shaped or oval. If desired, the absorbent member 642 can be wrapped in a high wet strength envelope web such as tissue paper or a synthetic fine pore, e.g., non-woven material, to minimize the potential for particles of absorbent gelling material to migrate out of the absorbent member 642. Another objective of such overwrapping is to desirably increase the in-use integrity of the dual layer absorbent core. Such a web can, in fact, be glued to the absorbent member 642. Suitable means for carrying out this gluing operation include the glue spraying procedure described in U.S. Pat. No. 4,573,986 issued to Minetola and Tucker, on Mar. 4, 1986, which patent is incorporated herein by reference.

In preferred embodiments, the absorbent member 642 of the dual layer absorbent core will be oblong. In especially preferred embodiments, an oblong absorbent member 642 overwrapped with spray-glued tissue will be employed.

Because the absorbent member 642 of the dual-layer absorbent core is generally smaller than the absorbent acquisition core 674 such that the absorbent member 642 may entirely be placed in the area of typical liquid deposition, and because the absorbent member 642 is preferably positioned in a specific positional relationship with respect to the backsheets 38 and/or the absorbent acquisition core 674, the acquisition zone 656 may be positioned anywhere in the absorbent member 642. The acquisition zone 656 is not necessarily limited to a portion of the deposition region, since in effect the entire absorbent member 642 of the dual-layer absorbent core is in the "deposition region". The acquisition zone 656 is, however, preferably positioned in a specific positional relationship with respect to the backsheets 38 and/or the absorbent acquisition core 674 of the diaper or other absorbent article. More particularly, the acquisition zone 656 should be positioned generally toward the front of the diaper at least partially in the crotch region 26 so that the acquisition zone 656 is most effectively located to quickly acquire and distribute liquids within the absorbent member 642. Thus, the positioning of the acquisition zone 656 in the diaper or other absorbent article can be defined by specifying the percentage of the top surface area (and/or volume) which is found forward of a particular point along the length of the diaper or other absorbent article. In accordance with the present invention, the acquisition zone 656 is preferably positioned relative to the backsheets 38 and/or the absorbent acquisition core 674 such that the top surface area of the acquisition zone 656 is completely positioned within the front two-thirds portion of the diaper or absorbent article. More preferably, the acquisition zone 656 is positioned relative to the backsheets 38 and/or the absorbent acquisition core 674 such that the top surface area of the acquisition zone 656 is completely positioned within the front half portion of the diaper or absorbent article and, most preferably, such that at least about 30% of the top surface area is located in the front one-third section of the diaper or absorbent article. The acquisition zone 656 is also most preferably completely positioned within the crotch region 26 of the diaper or absorbent article.

In order to maintain a certain minimal absorbency level in the front portions of the diaper or other absorbent article, it has been found that the top surface area of the acquisition zone 656 should comprise less than the entire top surface area of the absorbent member 642 of the dual-layer absorbent core. The top surface area (and/or volume) of the acquisition zone 656 preferably

comprises less than about 50% of the top surface area (and/or volume) of the absorbent member 642. More preferably, the top surface area of the acquisition zone 656 comprises less than about 35% of the top surface area of the absorbent member 642 and most preferably less than about 20% of the top surface area of the absorbent member 642. All other aspects of the acquisition zone 656 may be similar to the acquisition zone 56 discussed with respect to the absorbent member 42.

FIG. 8 shows a still further alternative embodiment of an absorbent member 842 of the present invention. The absorbent member 842 has an asymmetric shape (i.e., the absorbent member 842 is not symmetrical about its transverse centerline). In addition, the ear regions 860 and 862 and the ear regions of the back section 848 preferably have a different thickness than the central region 864. Further, the density and basis weight values of the ear regions 860 and 862 and the back section 848 are different from the storage zone 858 positioned in the central region 864 by virtue of the method by which the absorbent member 842 is formed.

The ear regions 860 and 862 and the back section 848 are preferably formed with a lesser basis weight than the storage zone 858 of the central region 864 so as to hold down the cost of such absorbent members 842 because less materials are being used. The absorbent member 842 is calendered to a uniform thickness in the central region 864 and the back section 848 except for its ear regions; the storage zone 858 of the central region 864, therefore, having a greater average density than the back section 848 except for its ear regions. (It should be understood that all or portions of the back section 848 may alternatively be calendered to a lesser thickness than the central region 864 such that the back section 848 has about an equal or a greater average density than the storage zone 858). The ear regions 860 and 862 and the ear regions of the back section 848 are preferably calendered such that they have substantially less thickness than the central region 864 and a greater average density than the storage zone 858 of the central region 864. The thickness difference between the ear regions and the central region 864 is such that the absorbent member 842 may be easily folded to a thin configuration during packaging with the ear regions overlaying the respective central region 864 and the back section 848. The ear regions are also preferably more dense than the storage zone 858 to provide an additional capillary difference so that liquids will tend to be pulled toward the ear regions so that the total absorbent capacity of the absorbent member 842 will be utilized.

The acquisition zone 856 of the absorbent member 842 has a funnel shape. The funnel shape is defined by a generally triangular portion 884 in combination with a stem or rectangular portion 886. The triangular portion 884 is especially effective in absorbing liquids discharged by a male wearer, while the stem portion 886 is effective for a female wearer. While it is possible that the shape of the acquisition zone 856 may vary according to the type of wearer contemplated, such as only a triangular portion 884 for a male wearer and only a stem portion 886 for a female wearer, it is preferred that the acquisition zone 856 comprise both elements.

Yet another alternative to each of the embodiments of the above absorbent members of the present invention comprises varying the pore size of the fibers without necessarily varying the density of the fibers to form an acquisition zone and a storage zone. For example, fine fiber dimensions of hardwood fluff can be utilized to

advantage by substituting at least about 50%, and preferably about 80% to 100%, hardwood fluff fibers of approximately the same density as lower density softwood fluff fibers for the softwood fibers in the storage zone. This can be done because the hardwood fluff has a smaller pore size than the softwood fluff material. As a result, a capillarity difference will still be obtained within the scope of the invention, even if the density of each zone is the same. Thus, for example, an absorbent member can be obtained from using a predominately softwood pulp with a fine pore structure to define the acquisition zone and a predominately hardwood fluff pulp to define the storage zone.

While particular embodiments of the present invention have been illustrated and described, it would be obvious to those skilled in the art that various other changes and modifications can be made without departing from the spirit and scope of the invention. It is therefore intended to cover in the appended claims all such changes and modifications that are within the scope of this invention.

What is claimed is:

1. An absorbent member having a back section and a front section contiguous with said back section, said front section having an end region and a deposition region contiguous with said end region and said back section so that said deposition region is positioned between said end region and said back section, the absorbent member comprising:

a mixture of hydrophilic fibrous material and discrete particles of absorbent gelling material;
a storage zone positioned in at least said deposition region of the absorbent member; and
an acquisition zone positioned in at least said deposition region of the absorbent member, said acquisition zone having a density and basis weight per unit area greater than zero, said acquisition zone having a lower average density and a lower average basis weight per unit area than said storage zone, said storage zone at least partially laterally surrounding the perimeter of said acquisition zone so as to be in liquid communication with at least a portion of the lateral area of said acquisition zone.

2. The absorbent member of claim 1 wherein said acquisition zone extends from the top surface of the absorbent member through at least a fraction of the total thickness of the absorbent member, the top surface area of said acquisition zone being completely positioned within said front section.

3. The absorbent member of claim 2 wherein the top surface area of said acquisition zone comprises less than about 50% of the top surface area of said front section.

4. The absorbent member of claim 1 wherein said acquisition zone extends from the top surface of the absorbent member through at least a fraction of the total thickness of the absorbent member, the top surface area of said acquisition zone being completely positioned within said deposition region.

5. The absorbent member of claim 4 wherein the top surface area of said acquisition zone comprises less than about 50% of the top surface area of said front section.

6. The absorbent member of claim 4 wherein the top surface area of said acquisition zone comprises less than about 35% of the top surface area of said front section.

7. The absorbent member of claim 4 wherein the top surface area of said acquisition zone comprises less than about 20% of the top surface area of said front section.

8. The absorbent member of claim 7 wherein said acquisition zone is positioned so that at least 30% of the top surface area of said acquisition zone is positioned in the front half of said front portion.

9. The absorbent member of claim 5 wherein said acquisition zone has a thickness approximately equal to the thickness of said storage zone.

10. The absorbent member of claim 9 wherein said back section has a thickness approximately equal to the thickness of said deposition region.

11. The absorbent member of claim 10 wherein said end region has a thickness approximately equal to the thickness of said deposition region.

12. The absorbent member of claim 11 wherein said acquisition zone extends through the entire thickness of the absorbent member.

13. The absorbent member of claim 12 wherein the top surface area of said acquisition zone is transversely centered within said deposition region.

14. The absorbent member of claim 13 wherein the top surface area of said acquisition zone has a generally triangular shape.

15. The absorbent member of claim 9 wherein said deposition region has a thickness greater than an about 1.5 times the thickness of said back section.

16. The absorbent member of claim 9 wherein said deposition region has a thickness greater than about 2.0 times the thickness of said back section.

17. The absorbent member of claim 16 wherein the top surface area of said acquisition zone is transversely centered within said deposition region.

18. The absorbent member of claim 17 wherein the top surface area of said acquisition zone has an oval shape.

19. The absorbent member of claim 9 wherein said front section further has two transversely spaced ear regions and a central region disposed intermediate said ear regions, said acquisition zone being positioned within said central region.

20. The absorbent member of claim 19 wherein said ear regions have a thickness substantially less than the thickness of said central region of said front portion.

21. The absorbent member of claim 20 wherein said ear regions and said central regions are demarked from each other by sufficiently abrupt thickness differences that said front section has a terraced character.

22. The absorbent member of claim 20 wherein said ear regions have a greater average density than said storage zone positioned within said central region.

23. The absorbent member of claim 13 wherein the top surface area of said acquisition zone has a funnel shape.

24. The absorbent member of claim 13 wherein the absorbent member has an asymmetrical shape.

25. The absorbent member of claim 24 wherein the average density of said back section is less than the average density of said storage zone of said deposition region.

26. The absorbent member of claim 25 wherein the top surface area of said acquisition zone has a generally triangular shape.

27. The absorbent member of claim 1 wherein the ratio of the average density of said storage zone to the average density of said acquisition zone is about equal to or greater than 1.25:1.

28. The absorbent member of claim 1 wherein the ratio of the average density of said storage zone to the

average density of said acquisition zone is about equal to or greater than 2:1.

29. The absorbent member of claim 28 wherein the density of said acquisition zone is from about 0.05 to about 0.15 grams/cm³.

30. The absorbent member of claim 29 wherein said acquisition zone has a substantially uniform density and uniform basis weight throughout.

31. The absorbent member of claim 1 wherein only said deposition region has discrete particles of absorbent gelling material dispersed therein.

32. The absorbent member of claim 1 wherein said mixture of hydrophilic fibrous material and discrete particles of absorbent gelling material has a fiber-to-particle weight ratio of from about 40:60 to about 98:2.

33. The absorbent member of claim 1 wherein said mixture of hydrophilic fibrous material and discrete particles of absorbent gelling material has a fiber-to-particle weight ratio of from about 50:50 to about 91:9.

34. The absorbent member of claim 33 wherein said particles of absorbent gelling material have a gel strength such that said particles have a shear modulus of at least about 2000 dynes/cm².

35. The absorbent member of claim 33 wherein said hydrophilic fibrous material and said discrete particles of absorbent gelling material are uniformly dispersed with respect to each other throughout the absorbent member.

36. An absorbent article comprising:

a liquid pervious topsheet;

a liquid impervious backsheet associated with said topsheet; and

an absorbent member according to claims 1, 2, 4, 9, 12, 16, 18, or 24 positioned between said topsheet and said backsheet.

37. An absorbent member having a back section and a front section contiguous with said back section, said front section having an end region and a deposition region contiguous with said end region and said back section so that said deposition region is positioned between said end region and said back section, the absorbent member comprising:

a mixture of hydrophilic fibrous material and discrete particles of absorbent gelling material;

a storage zone positioned in at least said deposition region of the absorbent member; and

an acquisition zone positioned in at least said deposition region of the absorbent member, said acquisition zone having a larger average pore size of the fibers than said storage zone, said storage zone at least partially laterally surrounding the perimeter of said acquisition zone so as to be in liquid communication with at least a portion of the lateral area of said acquisition zone.

38. An absorbent article having a front waistband region, a back waistband region, and a crotch region disposed between said front waistband region and said back waistband region, said absorbent article comprising:

a liquid pervious topsheet;

a liquid impervious backsheet associated with said topsheet; and

an absorbent member positioned between said topsheet and said backsheet, said absorbent member comprising a mixture of hydrophilic fibrous material and discrete particles of absorbent gelling material; a storage zone positioned in at least said crotch region of said absorbent article; and an ac-

quisition zone positioned in at least said crotch region of said absorbent article, said acquisition zone having a density of from about 0.05 g/cm³ to about 0.41 g/cm³, said acquisition zone having a lower average density and a lower average basis weight per unit area than said storage zone, said acquisition zone extending from the top surface of the absorbent member through at least a fraction of the total thickness of the absorbent member, the top surface area of said acquisition zone comprising less than about 35% of the top surface area of said absorbent member, said storage zone laterally surrounding the perimeter of said acquisition zone so as to be in liquid communication with the lateral area of said acquisition zone.

39. The absorbent article of claim 38 wherein said absorbent member has a uniform thickness and said acquisition zone extends through the entire thickness of said absorbent member.

40. The absorbent article of claim 39 additionally comprising an absorbent acquisition core positioned between said topsheet and said absorbent member.

41. The absorbent article of claim 40 wherein said absorbent member is generally oblong and has a top surface area that is from about 0.25 to about 1.0 times that of said absorbent acquisition core, said absorbent member being positioned relative to said backsheet and said absorbent acquisition core in a manner such that at least 75% of the absorbent gelling material in said absorbent member is found within the front two-thirds portion of the absorbent article.

42. The absorbent article of claims 38, 40, or 41 wherein said acquisition zone is positioned relative to said backsheet such that the top surface area of said acquisition zone is completely positioned within the front two-thirds section of the absorbent article.

43. The absorbent article of claim 41 wherein said acquisition zone is positioned relative to said backsheet such that the top surface area of said acquisition zone is completely positioned within the front one-half section of the absorbent article.

44. The absorbent article of claim 43 wherein the top surface area of said acquisition zone is completely positioned within said crotch region.

45. The absorbent article of claim 41 wherein said absorbent acquisition core has a core acquisition zone having a lower average density and a lower average basis weight than the remainder of said absorbent acquisition core.

46. The absorbent article of claim 45 wherein said core acquisition zone of said absorbent acquisition core overlays at least a portion of said acquisition zone of said absorbent member.

47. The absorbent article of claim 46 wherein said absorbent acquisition core contains particles of absorbent gelling material in an amount up to about 50% by weight of said absorbent acquisition core.

48. An absorbent core comprising:

an absorbent member comprising a mixture of hydrophilic fibrous material and discrete particles of absorbent gelling material, a storage zone, and an acquisition zone having a lower average density and a lower average basis weight per unit area than said storage zone, said acquisition zone having a density of from about 0.05 to about 0.41 g/cm³, said storage zone at least partially laterally surrounding the perimeter of said acquisition zone so as to be in liquid communication with at least a

portion of the lateral area of said acquisition zone; and

an absorbent acquisition core positioned adjacent said absorbent member, said absorbent acquisition core comprising hydrophilic fibers that are substantially free of absorbent gelling material, said absorbent acquisition core having a core acquisition zone having a lower average density and a lower average basis weight per unit area than the remainder of said absorbent acquisition core, said core acquisition zone being positioned with respect to said acquisition zone of said absorbent member so as to provide an overall acquisition zone throughout the entire thickness of the absorbent core.

49. The absorbent core of claim 48 wherein said core acquisition zone has the same shape as said acquisition zone of said absorbent member.

50. The absorbent core of claims 48 or 49 wherein said absorbent member and said absorbent acquisition core are a continuous web of fibrous material.

51. The absorbent core of claim 50 wherein said overall acquisition zone is funnel-shaped.

52. The absorbent core of claim 50 wherein said overall acquisition zone has a generally triangular shape.

53. An absorbent member having a back section and a front section contiguous with said back section, said front section having an end region and a deposition region contiguous with said end region and said back section so that said deposition region is positioned between said end region and said back section, the absorbent member comprising:

a mixture of hydrophilic fibrous material and discrete particles of absorbent gelling material;

a storage zone positioned in at least said deposition region of the absorbent member; and

an acquisition zone positioned in said deposition region of the absorbent member, said acquisition zone having a density of from about 0.03 to about 0.15 g/cm³; said acquisition zone having a lower average density and a lower average basis weight per unit area than said storage zone, said acquisition zone extending from the top surface of the absorbent member through the entire thickness of the absorbent member, the top surface area of said acquisition zone being completely positioned within said deposition region and comprising less than about 35% of the top surface area of said deposition region, said storage zone laterally surrounding the perimeter of said acquisition zone so as to be in liquid communication with the lateral area of said acquisition zone.

54. The absorbent member of claim 53 wherein the absorbent member has a uniform thickness.

55. The absorbent member of claim 54 wherein the absorbent member comprises a substantially uniform mixture of hydrophilic fibrous material and discrete particles of absorbent gelling material distributed throughout the absorbent member.

56. The absorbent member of claim 55 wherein said acquisition zone has a rectangular cross-sectional area.

57. The absorbent member of claim 56 wherein the ratio of the average density of said storage zone to the average density of said acquisition zone is about equal to or greater than 1.25:1.

58. The absorbent member of claim 57 wherein said mixture of hydrophilic fibrous material and said particles of absorbent gelling material are disposed in the

absorbent member in a fiber-to-particulate weight ratio of from about 40:60 to about 98:2.

59. The absorbent member of claim 58 wherein said back section has less average basis weight per unit area than said storage zone positioned in said deposition region.

60. The absorbent member of claim 59 wherein the top surface area of said acquisition zone has a generally triangular shape.

61. The absorbent member of claim 60 wherein the absorbent member has an asymmetric shape.

62. The absorbent member of claim 61 wherein the top surface area of said acquisition zone comprises less than about 20% of the top surface area of said deposition region.

63. The absorbent member of claim 62 wherein the ratio of the average density of said storage zone to the average density of said acquisition zone is about equal to or greater than 1.5:1.

64. The absorbent member of claim 58 wherein the top surface area of said acquisition zone has an hourglass shape.

65. The absorbent member of claim 58 wherein said acquisition zone comprises plural acquisition zones.

66. An absorbent article comprising:

a liquid pervious topsheet;

a liquid impervious backsheet associated with said topsheet; and

an absorbent member according to claims 53, 54, 55, 57, 58, 60, 61, 63, 64 or 65 positioned between said topsheet and said backsheet.

67. An absorbent member having a back section and a front section contiguous with said back section, said front section having an end region and a deposition region contiguous with said end region and said back section so that said deposition region is positioned between said end region and said back section, the absorbent member comprising:

a mixture of hydrophilic fibrous material and discrete particles of absorbent gelling material;

a storage zone positioned in at least said deposition region of the absorbent member; and

an acquisition zone positioned in said deposition region of the absorbent member, said acquisition zone having a density of from about 0.05 to about 0.41 g/cm³, said acquisition zone having a lower average density and a lower average basis weight per unit area than said storage zone, said acquisition zone extending from the top surface of the absorbent member through a fraction of the total thickness of the absorbent member, the top surface area of said acquisition zone being completely positioned within said deposition region and comprising less than about 35% of the top surface area of said deposition region, said storage zone laterally surrounding the perimeter of said acquisition zone so as to be in liquid communication with the lateral area of said acquisition zone.

68. The absorbent member of claim 67 wherein said storage zone and said acquisition zone have the same thickness.

69. The absorbent member of claim 68 wherein the absorbent member has a uniform thickness.

70. The absorbent member of claim 69 wherein said back section does not comprise said storage zone.

71. The absorbent member of claim 70 wherein only said storage zone comprises said mixture of hydrophilic

fibrous material and discrete particles of absorbent gelling material.

72. The absorbent member of claim 70 wherein only said storage zone and said acquisition zone comprise said mixture of hydrophilic fibrous material and discrete particles of absorbent gelling material.

73. The absorbent member of claim 72 wherein the top surface area of said acquisition zone has a generally triangular shape.

74. The absorbent member of claim 73 wherein the absorbent member has an asymmetric shape.

75. An absorbent article comprising:

a liquid pervious topsheet;

a liquid impervious backsheet associated with said topsheet; and

an absorbent member according to claims 67, 69, 72, 73 or 74 positioned between said topsheet and said backsheet.

76. A disposable diaper comprising:

a liquid pervious topsheet;

a liquid impervious backsheet associated with said topsheet;

an absorbent member according to claims 1, 48, 53 or 67 positioned between said topsheet and said backsheet; and

an elastic member disposed along each longitudinal edge of said disposable diaper.

77. An absorbent core comprising:

an absorbent member comprising a mixture of hydrophilic fibrous material and discrete particles of absorbent gelling material; and

an absorbent acquisition core positioned adjacent said absorbent member, said absorbent acquisition core comprising a mixture of hydrophilic fibrous material and up to about 8% by weight of said absorbent acquisition core of discrete particles of absorbent gelling material; a storage zone positioned in at least a portion of said absorbent acquisition core; and a core acquisition zone positioned in said absorbent acquisition core, said core acquisition zone having a density and basis weight per unit area greater than zero, said core acquisition zone having a lower average density and a lower average basis weight per unit area than said storage zone, said

core acquisition zone extending from the top surface of the absorbent member through the entire thickness of the absorbent acquisition core, the top surface area of said core acquisition zone comprising less than about 35% of the top surface area of said absorbent acquisition core, said storage zone laterally surrounding the perimeter of said core acquisition zone so as to be in liquid communication with the lateral area of said core acquisition zone.

78. An absorbent article having a front region, a back region, and a crotch region disposed between said front region and said back region, said absorbent article comprising:

a liquid pervious topsheet;

a liquid impervious backsheet associated with said topsheet;

an absorbent member comprising a mixture of hydrophilic fibrous material and discrete particles of absorbent gelling material; and

an absorbent acquisition core positioned between said topsheet and said absorbent member, said absorbent acquisition core comprising a mixture of hydrophilic fibrous material and up to about 8% by weight of said absorbent acquisition core of discrete particles of absorbent gelling material; a storage zone positioned in at least said crotch region of said absorbent article; and a core acquisition zone positioned in said crotch region of said absorbent article, said core acquisition zone having a density and basis weight per unit area greater than zero, said core acquisition zone having a lower average density and a lower average basis weight per unit area than said storage zone, said core acquisition zone extending from the top surface of the absorbent member through the entire thickness of the absorbent member, the top surface area of said core acquisition zone comprising less than about 35% of the top surface area of said absorbent member, said storage zone laterally surrounding the perimeter of said core acquisition zone so as to be in liquid communication with the lateral area of said core acquisition zone.

* * * * *

UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE
CERTIFICATE OF CORRECTION

PATENT NO. : 4,834,735
DATED : May 30, 1989
INVENTOR(S) : MIGUEL ALEMANY AND CHARLES J. BERG

It is certified that error appears in the above-identified patent and that said Letters Patent is hereby corrected as shown below:

Column 10, Line 34, "absorbance" should read ---absorbence---.
Column 14, Line 7, "guage" should read ---gauge---.
Column 14, Line 58, "guage" should read ---gauge---.
Column 20, Line 15, "postioning" should read ---positioning---.
Column 20, Line 55, "gential" should read ---genital---.
Title page, Assignee, "Proctor" should read ---Procter---.

Signed and Sealed this
Twenty-seventh Day of March, 1990

Attest:

JEFFREY M. SAMUELS

Attesting Officer

Acting Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks

[54] **ABSORBENT CORE HAVING A DUSTING LAYER**

- [75] **Inventor:** John J. Angstadt, Cincinnati, Ohio
- [73] **Assignee:** The Procter & Gamble Company, Cincinnati, Ohio
- [21] **Appl. No.:** 68,598
- [22] **Filed:** Jun. 30, 1987

Related U.S. Application Data

- [63] Continuation of Ser. No. 868,217, May 28, 1986, abandoned.
- [51] **Int. Cl.⁴** A61F 13/16; B32B 5/16; B32B 5/26; B32B 5/30
- [52] **U.S. Cl.** 428/213; 19/148; 19/302; 428/74; 428/76; 428/283; 428/286; 428/287; 428/298; 428/303; 428/311.1; 428/311.5; 428/311.7; 428/311.9; 428/319.7; 428/319.9; 428/339; 428/913; 604/368; 604/370; 604/372; 604/375; 604/376; 604/378; 604/385.1
- [58] **Field of Search** 428/213, 283, 286, 287, 428/339, 913; 604/368

[56] **References Cited**
U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

- 3,670,731 6/1972 Harmon .
 4,102,340 7/1978 Mesek et al. .
 4,297,410 10/1981 Tsuchiya et al. 428/283
 4,333,463 6/1982 Holtman .
 4,340,556 7/1982 Cieniewicz 264/119
 4,364,992 12/1982 Ito et al. .
 4,537,590 8/1985 Pieniak et al. 604/379
 4,604,313 8/1986 McFarland et al. 428/172
 4,610,678 9/1986 Weisman et al. 604/368
 4,630,479 3/1987 Insley 604/358
 4,635,757 4/1987 McFarland et al. 604/366
 4,673,402 6/1987 Weisman et al. 604/368

Primary Examiner—James C. Cannon
Attorney, Agent, or Firm—Steven W. Miller; John M. Pollaro; Fredrick H. Braun

[57] **ABSTRACT**

Airlaid fibrous webs having a primary layer having discrete particles of absorbent gelling material dispersed through at least a portion of the web airlaid over a dusting layer of essentially hydrophilic fiber material. The dusting layer acts to block the passage of particles injected in the stream of fibers forming the primary layer so as to minimize equipment plugging problems and the loss of particles or fibers through the foraminous forming element and to provide a more efficient absorbent core.

10 Claims, 7 Drawing Sheets

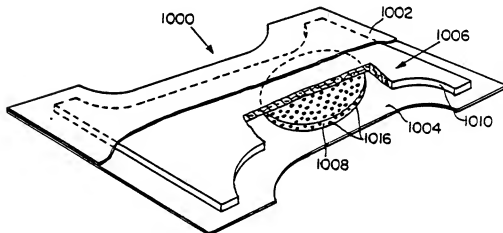


Fig. 1

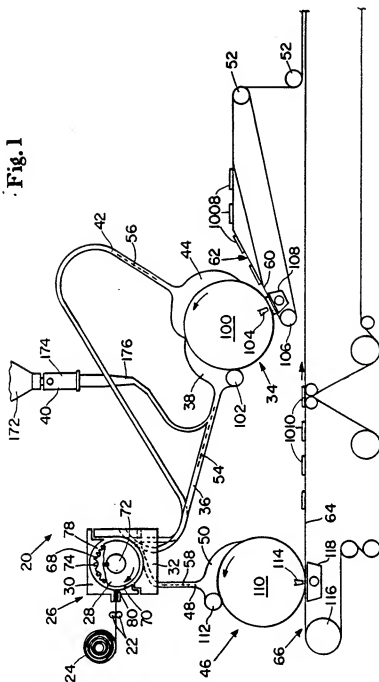


Fig. 2

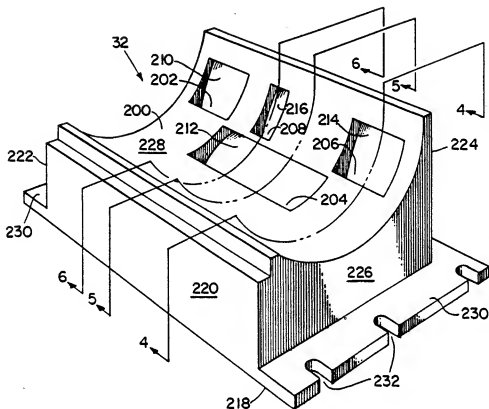


Fig. 3

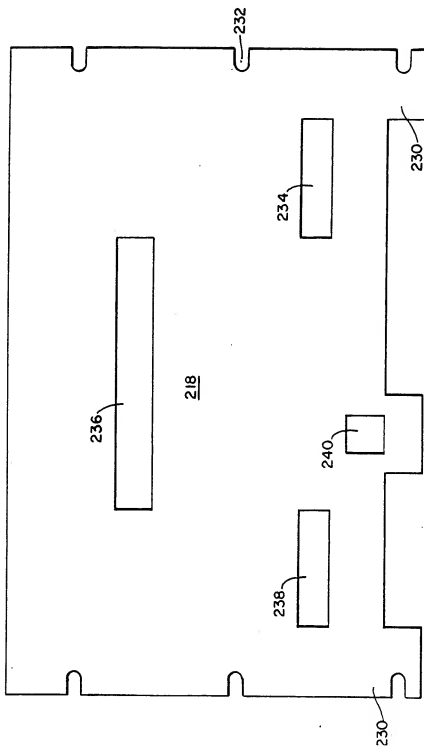


Fig. 4

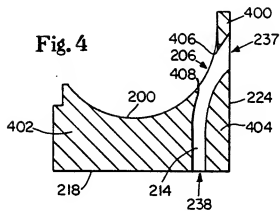


Fig. 5

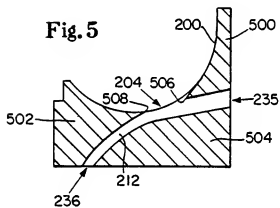


Fig. 6

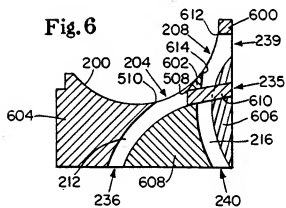


Fig. 7

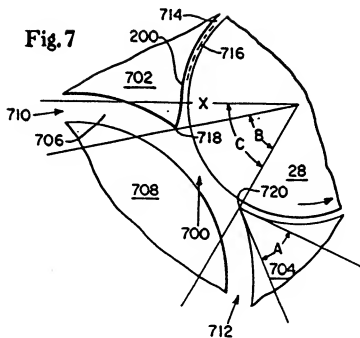


Fig. 8

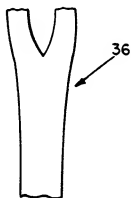


Fig. 9

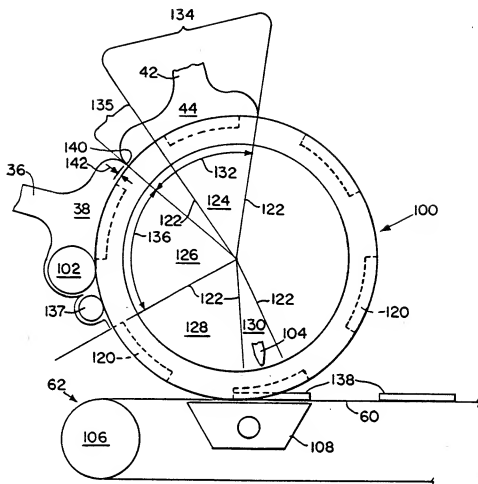


Fig. 10

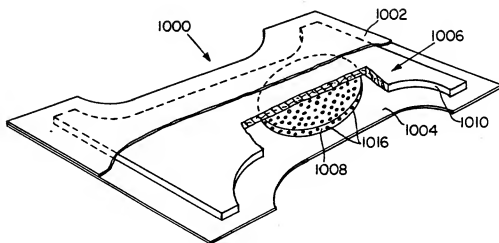
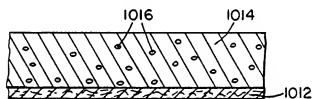


Fig. 11



ABSORBENT CORE HAVING A DUSTING LAYER

This application is a continuation of application Ser. No. 06/868,217 filed on May 28, 1986, and now abandoned.

FIELD OF THE INVENTION

This invention relates to airlaid fibrous webs having discrete particles dispersed through at least a portion of the web. More particularly, it relates to an absorbent core for use in an absorbent article that has a dusting layer of fibers formed by depositing a layer onto the foraminous forming element of an airlaying apparatus prior to depositing a layer of fibers mixed with discrete particles of a material such as an absorbent gelling material on the foraminous forming element so as to minimize the loss of such particles through the foraminous forming element and to provide an effective absorbent core.

BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION

Absorbent gelling materials (AGM's) are polymeric materials which are capable of absorbing large quantities of fluids such as body fluids and wastes and which are further capable of retaining such absorbed fluids under moderate pressures. These absorption characteristics of absorbent gelling materials make such materials especially useful for incorporation into absorbent articles such as disposable diapers, incontinent pads and catamenial napkins. For example, Procter & Gamble; European patent application EP-A-122,042; published Oct. 17, 1984 discloses absorbent structures wherein discrete particles of absorbent gelling material (hydrogel particles) are dispersed in a web of hydrophilic fibers. Additionally, U.S. patent application Ser. No. 734,426 filed on May 15, 1985, now U.S. Pat. No. 4,673,402 issued June 16, 1987, by Paul T. Weisman, Dawn I. Houghton and Dale A. Gellert discloses an absorbent article having a dual-layer absorbent core wherein a shaped core component consists essentially of hydrophilic fiber material and an insert core component consists essentially of a substantially uniform combination of hydrophilic fiber material and discrete particles of absorbent gelling material.

However, several difficulties have been encountered in airlaying absorbent cores having a multiplicity of layers and/or layers containing a mixture of fibers and particular amounts of discrete particles of materials such as absorbent gelling materials. Airlaying apparatus and methods require the removal of the gas or air which transports the fiber/particle admixture from beneath the foraminous forming element of the airlaying apparatus. During this removal, small particles which are mixed with the fibers can generally be drawn along with the air through the voids in the foraminous forming element, resulting in a loss of expensive absorbent gelling materials through the airlaying apparatus, the resultant absorbent article also having a reduced quantity of absorbent gelling material dispersed throughout its absorbent core resulting in a loss of absorbent capacity in the articles. Additionally, relatively large particles tend to plug or block the flow of air through the foraminous forming element resulting in a loss of uniformity of basis weight across or along the fibrous web or absorbent core as well as machinery down time necessitated in order to unplug the foraminous forming element. Thus, it would be advantageous to provide an airlaid fibrous

web having discrete particles of material, such as absorbent gelling materials, dispersed through at least a portion of the web without having reduced design quantities of materials in the core and with uniform basis weights across or along the material-containing layer of the web.

Accordingly, it is an object of the present invention to provide airlaid fibrous webs having discrete particles dispersed through at least a portion of the web.

It is a further object of the present invention to provide an absorbent core wherein fibers or fiber/particle admixtures are airlaid over a dusting layer to minimize loss of particles, to provide more uniform and efficient cores, and to provide more efficient and effective use of absorbent gelling materials.

SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

It is a particularly preferred embodiment, the present invention comprises airlaid fibrous webs having a primary layer of discrete particles of absorbent gelling material dispersed through at least a portion of the web that is airlaid over a dusting layer of essentially hydrophilic fibers. The dusting layer acts to block the passage of particles or fibers entrained in the primary layer so as to minimize equipment plugging problems and the loss of particles or fibers through the foraminous forming element. In addition, the dusting layer acts as a wicking layer, preferably adjacent the backsheet, to provide improved liquid acquisition and distribution by quickly acquiring liquids that migrate, such as by gravity, to the backsheet-side of the core and by transporting such liquids to the primary layer for storage of such liquids.

The present invention also relates to dual-layer cores and absorbent articles utilizing such absorbent cores having a dusting layer overlaid by a primary layer.

BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS

While the specification concludes with claims particularly pointing out and distinctly claiming the present invention, it is believed the present invention will be better understood from the following description in conjunction with the accompanying drawings in which:

FIG. 1 is a partially cut-away side view of a preferred apparatus of the present invention;

FIG. 2 is a perspective view of the splitter chute apparatus of the present invention;

FIG. 3 is a bottom view of the splitter chute apparatus of the present invention;

FIG. 4 is a cross-sectional view taken along section line 4-4 of FIG. 2;

FIG. 5 is a cross-sectional view taken along section line 5-5 of FIG. 2;

FIG. 6 is a cross-sectional view taken along section line 6-6 of FIG. 2;

FIG. 7 is an enlarged cross-sectional illustration of a transition zone of a splitter chute apparatus;

FIG. 8 is a schematic illustration of the first deposition chute of the present invention;

FIG. 9 is an enlarged cross-sectional view of the first airlaying means of the present invention.

FIG. 10 is a cut-away view of a preferred disposable absorbent article such as a diaper having a dual-layer absorbent core formed by the apparatus and methods of the present invention.

FIG. 11 is an enlarged cross-sectional view of the insert core component of the absorbent core of the diaper shown in FIG. 10.

DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF THE INVENTION

While the present invention will be described in detail in the context of providing air-laid fibrous webs for use as absorbent cores in absorbent articles such as disposable diapers, the present invention is in no way limited to such an application. The present invention may be employed with equal facility to provide air-laid fibrous webs for later incorporation into a number of articles, including incontinent briefs, sanitary napkins, bandages and the like.

FIG. 10 shows a particularly preferred embodiment of a disposable diaper having an absorbent core of the present invention. The disposable diaper 1000 comprises a topsheet 1002, a liquid impervious backsheet 1004, and an absorbent core 1006 disposed between the topsheet 1002 and the backsheet 1004. A preferred construction of such a disposable diaper is described in U.S. Pat. No. 3,860,003, issued Jan. 14, 1975 to Kenneth B. Buell, which patent is herein incorporated by reference.

The absorbent core 1006 preferably comprises two or more distinct core components. The absorbent core comprises an insert core component 1008 (first web component) and a shaped core component 1010 (second web component). This preferred absorbent core is described in more detail in U.S. patent application Ser. No. 734,426, filed May 15, 1985, now U.S. Pat. No. 4,673,402 entitled "Absorbent Articles with Dual-Layered Cores" issued June 16, 1987 to Paul T. Weisman, Dawn I. Houghton, and Dale A. Gellert, which is herein incorporated by reference.

The shaped core component 1010 serves to quickly collect and temporarily hold and distribute discharge body fluid. Thus, the wicking properties of the materials or fibers in the shaped core component 1010 are of primary importance. Therefore, the shaped core component 1010 consists essentially of an hourglass shaped web of hydrophilic fiber material. While many types of fibers are suitable for use in the shaped core component 1010, preferred types of fibers are cellulose fibers, in particular, wood pulp fibers. While the shaped core component 1010 is preferably free of particles of an absorbent gelling material, the shaped core component 1010 may alternatively contain small amounts of particles of an absorbent gelling material so as to enhance its fluid acquisition properties. Other materials in combination with the fibers may also be incorporated into the core component such as synthetic fibers.

The insert core component 1008 absorbs discharge body fluids from the shaped core component 1010 and retains such fluids. As shown in FIGS. 10 and 11, the insert core component 1008 consists essentially of a thin dusting layer 1012 of hydrophilic fiber material overlaid by a primary layer 1014 of a uniform combination of hydrophilic fiber material and particular amounts of discrete particles 1016 of substantially water-insoluble, fluid absorbing, absorbent gelling materials. The hydrophilic fibers in the insert core component 1008 are preferably of the same type as those herein described for use in the shaped core component 1010. There are several suitable absorbent gelling materials which can be used in the insert core component, such as silica gels or organic compounds such as crosslinked polymers. Particularly preferred absorbent gelling materials are hydrolyzed acrylonitrile grafted starch, acrylic acid grafted starch, polyacrylates and isobutylene maleic anhydride copolymers, or mixtures thereof.

While the dusting layer 1012 of the absorbent core 1006 is preferably a relatively thin layer of hydrophilic fiber materials, it should be understood that the term "dusting layer", used herein to denote a certain layer of the fibrous web or as a prefix to identify certain elements which form or are used to form the dusting layer, should not be limited to such a thin layer, but includes embodiments wherein such a layer may be any thickness. For example, the dusting layer is preferably about 1.0 inch to about 1.5 inch (about 25 mm to about 38 mm) thick with about 1.25 inches (about 31.75 mm) being especially preferred, although thicker or thinner layers are contemplated.

FIG. 1 discloses a particularly preferred embodiment of the apparatus for forming air-laid fibrous webs having a multiplicity of components such as the absorbent core 1006 of the disposable diaper 1000 that is shown in FIGS. 10 and 11. In the embodiment illustrated in FIG. 1, the apparatus 20 is shown to comprise a pair of counter-rotating metering infed rolls 22 for directing a roll 24 of dry-lap material into engagement with a disintegrator 26, the disintegrator 26 having a rotary disintegrating element 28 partially enclosed by a housing 30; a splitting means or apparatus such as a splitter chute 32 for providing a multiplicity of streams of air-entrained fibers; a first air-laying means such as a drum-type air-laying apparatus 34 for forming a first web component; a first deposition means such as a first deposition chute 36 and hood 38 for directing a first stream of air-entrained fibers to the first air-laying means and for depositing the fibers on the first air-laying means; an absorbent gelling material injection apparatus 40 or means for mixing discrete particles of an absorbent gelling material with the stream of air-entrained fibers that is directed through the first deposition chute 36; a dusting layer deposition means such as a dusting layer deposition chute 42 and hood 44 for directing a dusting layer stream of air-entrained fibers to the first air-laying means and depositing the fibers on the first air-laying means; a second air-laying means such as a second drum-type air-laying apparatus 46 for forming a second web component; a second deposition means such as a second deposition chute 48 and hood 50 for directing a second stream of air-entrained fibers to the second air-laying means and for depositing the fibers onto the second air-laying means; and a uniting means such as a uniting roll apparatus 52 for uniting the first and second web components. In order to simplify the disclosure, several elements or means which can readily be supplied by those skilled in the art have been omitted from the drawings. Such elements include structural members, bearings, power transmission units, controlling units and the like. Additionally, a first stream 54 of air-entrained fibers is shown in FIG. 1 to be moving through the first deposition chute 36; a dusting layer stream 56 of air-entrained fibers is shown to be moving 32 through the dusting layer deposition chute 42; a second stream 58 of air-entrained fibers is shown to be moving through the second deposition chute 48; an endless stream of insert core components 1008 (first web components) is shown moving on the belt 60 of a first take-away conveyor 62; and an endless stream of shaped core components 1010 (second web components) is shown moving on the belt 64 of a second take-away conveyor 66.

A preferred embodiment of a disintegrator 26 is shown in FIG. 1 to comprise a rotary disintegrating element 28 partially enclosed in a housing 30. A similar-

type disintegrator is shown in U.S. Pat. No. 3,863,296, issued on Feb. 4, 1975 to Kenneth B. Buell, which patent is herein incorporated by reference. However, as used herein, the term "disintegrator" is not intended to limit the present invention to apparatus of the type illustrated in the above patent, but includes apparatus such as hammermills, fiberizers, picker rolls, lickin rolls or any other apparatus which separates a roll or mat of fibrous material into its individual fibers.

As used herein, a fibrous or drylap material or sheet describes any type of fibrous sheet material capable of disintegration into individual fibers. For example, the fibrous material can include fibers of rayon, polyester, cotton or the like, with cellulosic fibers being especially preferred.

The disintegrator 26 preferably comprises a rotary disintegrating element 28 comprising a plurality of rotors 68 and a housing 30 having a generally cylindrical bore 70. A shaft 72 is journaled in the closed ends of the housing 30 such that one end of the shaft 72 extends outside the housing 30 to permit coupling the shaft in a conventional manner to a motive power source such as an electric motor (not shown). The motor continuously drives the shaft 72 in the direction as shown. The rotors 68 are keyed to the shaft 72 in juxtaposed relation, each being provided with a plurality of teeth 74 extending outwardly such that their tips are adapted to serve as impacting elements. As used herein, "rotor" refers to thin rotored discs. With the above arrangement, successive teeth 74 impact the end of the infedding sheet 24 as the rotors are turned. The rotors 68, when keyed into place and molded together, form an axial rotary cylindrical disintegrating element 28 rotatable about its cylindrical axis. This configuration is preferred since it permits the favorable internal distribution of stresses set up during operation of the disintegrator 26.

The housing 30 partially encloses the disintegrating element 28 and defines a flow channel 78 for a column of fibers between the disintegrating element and the housing. The flow channel 78 is sized to give from about one thirty-second to about one-fourth inch (about 0.79 mm to about 6.35 mm) clearance between the blade tips of the disintegrating element 28 and the housing 30 so as to direct the column of fibers from the inner end of the housing toward the splitter chute 32. The housing 30 has a cylindrical bore 70 to partially enclose the disintegrating element 28 and an inlet portion 80 which is slotted to provide an inlet opening having an inner end. (While the housing 30 may alternatively be comprised of additional elements, such as not preferred in the present invention). The inlet opening 80 is disposed so as to receive the fibrous sheet 24 and guide it to the inner end, which defines a sheet support element, whereas an edge of the fibrous sheet 24 is disintegrated.

With the above arrangement, successive teeth 74 impact the end of the infedding drylap sheet 24 as the rotors 68 are turned to separate the fibers of the fibrous sheet 24 into individual fibers. After separation of the fibers of the fibrous sheet into the individual fibers, a column of fibers is formed across the axial width of the housing 30. As used herein, "a column of fibers" denotes a pattern or system of fibers disposed across the axial width of the housing. The rotation of the disintegrating element 28 imparts an inherent velocity to the fibers across the axial width of the housing 30, whereupon a continuous column of fibers is directed around the flow channel 78 toward the splitter chute 32.

As shown in FIG. 1, the splitter chute 32 is preferably joined to the housing 30 of the disintegrator 26. The term "joined" includes embodiments wherein the splitter chute 32 is a separate element directly or indirectly connected to or within the housing 30 (i.e. integral) or embodiments wherein the splitter chute 32 is the same element as the housing 30 so that the splitter chute 32 is a continuous and undivided element of the housing 30 (i.e. unitary). While the splitter chute 32 may be an independent apparatus from the disintegrator 26, or the splitter chute 32 may be unitary with the housing 30 of the disintegrator 26, such embodiments are not preferred. The splitter chute 32 is preferably an integral member that is joined into the housing 30 of the disintegrator 26.

FIG. 2 shows a particularly preferred embodiment of an apparatus (splitting means or splitter chute 32) for separating a multiplicity of streams of air-entrained fibers by splitting a column of fibers into a multiplicity of fiber streams and independently entraining each of the fiber streams in air. As shown in FIG. 2, the apparatus comprises a splitting member 200 having a number of ports disposed in and along its surface. As shown, the ports are designated a first port 202, a second port 204, a third port 206, and a dusting layer port 208. The apparatus also comprises multiple independent conduit means, such as conduit ducts, for directing high velocity columns of air past the ports disposed along the stripping member 200. The conduit ducts are designated in FIG. 2 according to which port with which the conduit duct is in communication, so as to define a first conduit duct 210, a second conduit duct 212, a third conduit duct 214 and a dusting layer conduit duct 216.

The splitter chute 32 shown in FIG. 2 is a preferred embodiment of the apparatus of the present invention. The splitter chute is shown in FIG. 2 to additionally comprise a base 218, four side walls 220, 222, 224 and 226, respectively, and a top wall 228 which defines the splitting member 200. The base 218 preferably extends beyond the lateral side walls 222 and 226 to define flanges 230 having bores 232 so that the splitter chute 32 may be bolted or otherwise secured in any conventional manner to the housing 30 of the disintegrator 26. FIG. 3 shows a preferred embodiment of the base 218, the base 218 being shown to accommodate the discharge outlets of each of the conduit ducts. As shown in FIG. 3, the discharge outlets are designated a first discharge outlet 234, a second discharge outlet 236, a third discharge outlet 238 and a dusting layer discharge outlet 240.

The splitting member 200 provides a means for splitting the column of fibers into multiple fiber streams. The splitting member 200 directs the column of fibers to the ports where portions of the column of fibers are split-off into individual fiber streams. The term "splitting member" is used herein to describe a number of different structures having varying configurations and shapes such as ducts, pipes, sheets or combinations of sheets of material, a number of plates in combination, or a number of different elements in combination. The splitting member 200 is shown in FIG. 2 as a curvilinear surface defined by the top wall 228 of the splitter chute 32. However, alternative preferred slitting members include a duct having ports disposed therein or, for example, if the splitter chute 32 is unitary with the housing 30 of the disintegrator 26, the splitting member 200 may comprise a combination of a portion of the disintegrating element 28, the housing 30, and the surface of

the top wall 228 of the splitter chute 32, together defining a flow channel 78 through which the column of fibers may be directed.

While the splitting member 200 may have a number of configurations, the surface in which the ports are located or disposed preferably has a curvilinear profile. A curvilinear profile provides angular displacement and velocity components to the fibers to assist in separating and in drawing off the fibers into the individual conduit ducts without the presence of fiber catching mechanical edges or walls such that fiber clumping is minimized. While flat or rectilinear splitting members are contemplated by the present invention, they do not provide this angular displacement advantage as will be described later. In addition, when the splitter chute 32 is joined to the housing 30, a curvilinear splitting member accommodates the shape of the disintegrating element 28. While the curvilinear profile of the splitting member is preferably circular in nature, a number of different curvilinear profiles would be equally preferred such as hyperbolic, parabolic or ellipsoid profiles.

The splitting member 200 may be positioned anywhere relative to where the column of fibers are discharged by the disintegrating element 28. For example, the splitting member 200 of the splitter chute 32 may be positioned relatively for downstream from the disintegrator 26. However, this configuration is not preferred because the column of fibers tends to lose its momentum and is subject to width biasing into fiber wads the farther from the disintegrating element 28 the splitting member 200 is positioned. Thus it has been found that in order to have as clean and accurate a split as possible (a split which provides consistent basis weight fiber streams and minimizes fiber clumping), the splitting member 200 should be positioned as closely as possible to the disintegrating element 28, preferably adjacent to it so that the column of fibers is drawn away from and off of the disintegrating element as it is split into the fiber streams.

As shown in FIG. 2, the splitting member 200 is provided with a number of ports. The ports put the columns of air that are directed through the conduit ducts in communication with the portion of the column of fibers that is directed along the splitting member 200 so that portions of the fiber column may be split-off and drawn into the conduit duct to form a distinct fiber stream. Thus the ports provide an opening for the intake of a stream of fibers into the conduit ducts. While the ports may take a number of shapes and configurations, a preferred configuration of each of the ports is a rectangular-shaped opening having an upstream edge and a downstream or doctor's edge. (These edges are shown and described more particularly in FIGS. 4, 5 and 6).

In order to effectively and efficiently split-off the fibers, at least two ports must be at least partially laterally spaced from each other. As used herein, the term "laterally spaced" is used to denote that a portion of a port is offset to one side of and out of alignment with at least a portion of another port such that a line that is perpendicular to the lateral dimension would not intersect both of the ports. (Lateral being defined as the dimension across the width of the splitting member.) Thus, a partially laterally spaced port denotes that a portion of the first port is disposed to one side of and out of alignment with a portion of the second port. The ports may alternatively and preferably be completely axially offset. In addition, each of the ports may be either longitudinally aligned or spaced downstream or upstream

from each other. The term "longitudinally spaced" being used herein to denote that a port is disposed upstream or downstream from another. (Longitudinal being defined as the dimension along the length of the splitting member.) A preferred configuration provides that each successive port be laterally spaced and longitudinally spaced from each successive port. This configuration providing the most efficient split of the fiber column.

As shown in FIG. 2, the first port 202 preferably is disposed adjacent a lateral side wall 222 of the splitter chute 32, an outermost portion of the column of fibers thereby being split-off by the first port 202. The second port 204 is preferably longitudinally spaced downstream and laterally spaced from the first port 202 so as to split-off a second or central width of the column of fibers. The third port 206 is preferably longitudinally aligned with the first port 202 but is laterally spaced from both the first and second ports so as to strip off a third width of fibers from the column of fibers. The dusting layer port 208 which is provided to create a stream of fibers that is used to form the dusting layer, is longitudinally aligned with but laterally spaced from both the first and third ports 202 and 206, but is laterally aligned with but longitudinally spaced from a portion of the second port 204. While the ports may be longitudinally and laterally arranged in a number of different configurations, the configuration shown in FIG. 2 is especially preferred to provide a fibrous web having two core components, one of the components having discrete particles of absorbent gelling material dispersed through one of its layers.

The first and third ports 202 and 206 are preferably centered relative to the second port 204 on the outer edges of the splitting member 200 so as to accommodate variations in the width of the drylap sheet that is fed into the disintegrator 26. Because the fiber streams that are formed from the first and third ports 202 and 206 are merged in the first deposition chute 36 downstream of the splitter chute 32, if there are any major variations in the width of the drylap sheet 24, this variation will not cause a significant change in the basis weight of the web component (insert layer) formed by the first and third fiber streams because they are merged into a combined or primary fiber stream. Thus, the first and third ports 202 and 206 should have equal widths and be positioned symmetrically about the centerline of the splitter chute 32 or splitting member 200.

While the dusting layer port 208 is preferably laterally spaced and longitudinally spaced from all of the ports so that the column of fibers is more efficiently split into four fiber streams, space and size constraints require that the preferred embodiment of the splitter chute 32 have the dusting layer port 208 laterally aligned with a portion of the second port 204 and longitudinally aligned with the first and third ports 202 and 206. The dusting layer port 208 is laterally aligned with a portion of the second port 204 because the second port 204 is preferably much wider than the first and third ports 202 and 206 such that the loss of such a small stream of fibers will have a minimal effect on the ultimate basis weight of the core component formed by the second fiber stream. As shown in FIG. 2, the dusting layer port 208 is preferably laterally spaced from the centerline of the splitter chute 32 toward an edge of the second port 204 so that any effect that the removal of the dusting layer fiber stream has on the basis weight of the hourglass shaped core component is centered along

the ears of the shaped core component rather than in the primary absorbent area of the shaped core component.

The conduit ducts provide a means through which a column of high velocity air as well as streams of air-entrained fibers are directed or conveyed. The conduit ducts may be separated elements such as pipes, channels or ducts which are secured to the splitting member 200 adjacent the ports, or an integral element formed by the positioning of plates as is shown in FIGS. 4, 5 and 6. The conduit ducts should be configured for flow rates of preferably greater than or equal to about 75 ACFM per inch of disintegrating element 28 width and for velocities of preferably greater than or equal to about 6,000 feet per minute, more preferably about 10,000 fpm. Thus it is preferably to make the conduit ducts about 1 inch thick and as wide as required to be in complete communication with the full width of the particular port with which the duct is in communication. While the conduit ducts may have any particular cross-sectional shape, rectilinear ducts or curvilinear ducts having a radius of curvature greater than about 6 inches are especially preferred. While rectilinear conduit chutes minimize air and fiber turbulence within the ducts, especially when such ducts are disposed tangentially to the curvilinear surface of the splitting member 200 adjacent that particular port, curvilinear ducts are especially preferred due to size and shape constraints and equipment arrangement.

The inlets of the conduit ducts provide a means to inject or draw ambient air into the conduit ducts at relatively high velocities. While the inlet ports may take on a number of different configurations, a configuration having an aerodynamic shape is believed to function to minimize air turbulence as the air is drawn into the conduit duct.

A preferred configuration of the discharge outlets along the base 218 of the splitter chute 32 is shown in FIG. 3. The first and third discharge outlets 234 and 238 are preferably aligned across the width of the base so that the first deposition chute 210 which merges the fiber streams downstream may conveniently be secured to both discharge outlets. The dusting layer discharge outlet 240 is slightly offset from the first and third discharge outlets 234 and 238 to more easily accommodate the dusting layer deposition chute. The second discharge outlet 236 is set apart from all of the other discharge outlets due to the configuration of the second conduit duct and to facilitate equipment arrangements of two laydown drums.

The percentage of the total airlift weight per absorbent core that will form each of the specific core components will vary according to the size of the absorbent article that is being manufactured. Thus a large diaper may require a greater percentage of the total airlift weight in the shaped core component than a medium diaper. Because the axial width of the ports determine the percentage of airlift dedicated to each core component, it is preferably that the axial width of each port across the total axial width of the splitting member 200 be able to be changed according to the core component airlift weights. Accordingly, the splitter chute 32 is preferably manufactured from a series of plates that are bolted or otherwise secured together in any conventional manner to form varying size chambers so that the width of each port, and correspondingly the width of each conduit duct, may be varied to accommodate the particular basis weight required in the final core component.

FIG. 4 shows a cross-sectional view of a preferred embodiment of the splitter chute 32 taken along sectional line 4—4 of FIG. 2. The cross-sectional view illustrates the configuration of the splitting member 200, the third port 206, and the third conduit duct 214 having an inlet 237 and a discharge outlet 238 in the third chamber or splitting region of the splitter chute 32. (While the present invention will be described with reference to the third chamber or splitting region, it should be understood that the description is equally applicable to the first chamber or splitting region.) The above elements are preferably formed and defined by three plates comprising a top plate 400, a downstream plate 402, and a base plate 404.

The top plate 400 defines a portion of the top wall 228 or splitting member 200 of the present invention as well as a top wall of the third conduit duct 214, a portion of the inlet 237, and the upstream edge 406 of the third port 206. The portion of the top plate 400 that defines the upstream edge 406 of the third port 206 is shown to be tapered away from the circular profile of the splitting member 200. This configuration is preferred so that the portion of the column of fibers directed in the third chamber will begin to depart from the disintegrating element 28 due to the lack of constraint provided by the tapered upstream edge 406 as well as the fact that each fiber has an angular velocity component directed tangentially to its angular path which tends to direct or release the fibers away from the disintegrating element 28.

The downstream plate 402 defines the portion of the splitting member 200 that is downstream of the third port 206, a portion of a wall of the third conduit duct 214, and a portion of the base 218 of the splitter chute 32. Additionally, the downstream plate 402 defines the downstream edge or doctor's edge 408 of the third port 206. In conventional disintegrating apparatus, this doctor's edge is a point where a significant amount of the fibers are removed from the teeth of the disintegrating element and directed into a conduit duct. The result of this removal at the doctor's edge causes a significant amount of fiber clumping along the doctor's edge. However, the term "doctor's edge" is used herein for descriptive purposes. Very little, if any, fibers are removed from the teeth 74 of the disintegrating element 28 by this edge. Most of the fibers are removed by the effects of the pressure differential established adjacent the port and the angular velocity and momentum of the fibers as the fibers are drawn or pulled away from the disintegrating element. Thus, there is reduced fiber clumping along this doctor's edge 408.

The base plate 402 defines a wall of the third conduit duct 214, as well as a portion of the base 218 and side wall 224 of the splitter chute 32.

FIG. 5 shows a cross-sectional view of a preferred embodiment of the splitter chute taken along sectional line 5—5 of FIG. 2. The cross-sectional view illustrates the configuration of the splitting member 200, the second port 204, and the second conduit duct 212 having an inlet 235 and a discharge outlet 236 in the second chamber or splitting region of the splitter chute 32. (This portion of the second chamber is where no dusting layer fiber stream is formed.) The above elements are preferably formed and defined by three plates comprising a top plate 500, a downstream plate 502 and a base plate 504. These plates are arranged in a similar manner and define similar portions of the splitter chute as the plates shown in FIG. 4 except that the second

port 204 and the second conduit ducts 212 are arranged downstream along the splitting member 200 from where the first and third ports 202 and 206 are disposed. The upstream edge 506 and the doctor's edge 508 of the second port are also shown in FIG. 5.

FIG. 6 shows a cross-sectional view of a preferred embodiment of the splitter chute 32 taken along sectional line 6—6 of FIG. 2. The cross-sectional view illustrates the configuration of the splitting member 200, the dusting layer port 208, the second port 204, the dusting layer conduit duct 216 having an inlet 239 and a discharge outlet 240 and the second conduit duct 212 having an inlet 235 and a discharge outlet 236, in the dusting layer chamber or splitting region of the splitter chute. While the dusting layer chamber may be configured in a number of different ways, including the configuration shown in FIG. 4 wherein the second port and duct would not be formed in the dusting layer chamber, such embodiments are not preferred. The above elements are preferably formed and defined by six plates comprising a top plate 600, an intermediate plate 602, a downstream plate 604, a side plate 606, a base plate 608, and a wedge plate 610.

The splitting member 200 is formed from the top surface of the top plate 600, the intermediate plate 602 and the downstream plate 604. The intermediate plate 602 acts as a separator to define the ports. The dusting layer port 208 is defined by the top plate 600 and the intermediate plate 602; the top plate 600 defining the upstream edge 612 of the dusting layer port 208 and the intermediate plate 602 defining the doctor's edge 614 of the dusting layer port 208. The second port 204 is defined by the intermediate plate 602 and the downstream plate 604; the intermediate plate 604 defining the upstream edge 508, and the downstream plate 604 defining the doctor's edge 510 of the second port 204. The dusting layer conduit duct 216 is formed by the top plate 600, the side plate 606, the intermediate plate 602, and the base plate 608. The second conduit duct 212 is defined by the intermediate plate 602, the downstream plate 604 and the base plate 608. It should be noted that the second conduit duct 212 is blocked by the wedge plate 610. The wedge plate 610 is a plate having tapered ends and a square hole cut vertically through the plate so as to block the flow of air through the portion of the second conduit duct 212 which is in communication with the dusting layer conduit duct 216 while permitting the flow of air through the dusting layer conduit duct 216.

A particularly exemplary splitter chute 32 is configured of twenty-seven sets of plates across its width, each of the plates having a width of about five-eighths inch (about 15.8 mm). Thus, the cumulative width of the splitter chute 32 is about seventeen inches (about 432 mm). The first and third chambers are configured of from about four to about eight plates each such that the first and third ports 202 and 206 each have a width of about 2.5 to about 5.0 inches (about 63.5 to about 127 mm). The second chamber is configured of from about thirteen to about twenty plates such that the width of the second port 204 is about 8.12 to about 12.5 inches (about 206 to about 317.5 mm). Of these thirteen to twenty plates, about two to four plates are configured to provide the dusting layer chamber such that the dusting layer port 208 has a width of about 1.25 to about 2.5 inches (about 31.75 to about 63.5 mm). The dusting layer chamber being laterally spaced from the first

chamber by at least two plates or about 1.25 inches (about 31.75 mm).

The splitter chute 32 is preferably operated such that each column of air that is drawn through the conduit ducts has a velocity of about six-thousand to about fifteen-thousand feet per minute (about 1.83 to about 4.57 km per minute), preferably about ten-thousand feet per minute (3.05 km per minute) and a flow rate of from about 40 to about 100 ACFM per inch, preferably about 75 ACFM per inch.

FIG. 7 shows an expanded cross-sectional view of a preferred embodiment of the splitter chute 32 adjacent any of the ports of the present invention. The disintegrating element 28 is shown to be rotating in a counter-clockwise direction. The splitting member 200 having a port 700 is shown to be a curvilinear surface formed by a top plate 702 and a downstream plate 704. The conduit duct 706 is formed from the surfaces of the top plate 702, the downstream plate 704 and the base plate 708, the inlet of the conduit duct 706 being designated 710 and the discharge outlet being designated 712. Also as shown in FIG. 7, the disintegrating element 28, the splitting member 200, and the housing (not shown) define a narrow flow channel 714 through which the column of fibers 716 is directed. The upstream edge 718 of the port 700 (the edge of the top plate 702 adjacent the port 700) is shown in FIG. 7 to be tapered away from the disintegrating element 28. (As previously discussed, this configuration is preferred so that the fibers may begin to release from the disintegrating element.) The doctor's edge 720 or downstream edge of the port 700 (the edge of the downstream plate 704 adjacent the port 700) is shown to have an included angle "A" as defined by the tangents to the surfaces of the plate. A tangent release point, designated by the "X" in FIG. 7, is the point defined wherein the tangential component of angular velocity of the fiber is such that the fiber tends to release from its angular path away from the disintegrating element 28. While the tangent release point may be positioned either upstream or adjacent the port 700, it is preferable that the tangent release point be configured slightly upstream of the port 700 to provide the maximum stripping effect while minimizing clumping.

It has been found that the geometry of the members may have an important determination upon whether fiber clumping can be minimized. The angle "8" formed between the upstream edge 718 and the doctor's edge 720 defines the actual opening of the port 700. The actual opening is preferably not greater than about 60°, more preferably about 15° to about 45° and most preferably about 30°. The angle "C" defined by the angle between the tangent release point, X, and the doctor's edge 720 defines an effective opening of the port 700. The effective opening is preferably not greater than about 75°, more preferably about 30° to about 60°, and most preferably about 40° to about 45°. Thus the tangent release point should not be disposed upstream of the port 700 by more than about fifteen degrees (15°). It has also been found that the included angle, angle "A", is preferably about 15° to about 60°, most preferably about 45°. It should also be noted that the angle between the ports from center-to-center should preferably be not greater than about 90°, more preferably about 30° to about 60°, and most preferably about 45° to achieve a sufficient separation between the ports to minimize interaction between the ports.

Referring to FIG. 7, the operation of the apparatus of this invention will be described. The column of fibers 716 is directed around the flow channel 714 along the splitting member 200 of the splitter chute 32 by the pumping action of the disintegrating element 28. The column of fibers 716 is directed along the curvilinear surface of the splitting member such that angular motion and thus angular velocity and momentum is imparted to each of the fibers in the column. A high velocity column of air is simultaneously directed through the conduit duct 706 and past the port 700. This column of air may be provided by any conventional means (not shown) such as a blower positioned to inject air through the inlet 710 of the conduit duct 706 or a vacuum means positioned downstream of the discharge outlet 712, preferably below the foraminous forming element of the drum-type airlaying apparatus so as to draw ambient air through the inlet 710 of the conduit duct 706.

While not wishing to be bound by theory, by maintaining a column of high velocity air (at least about 6000 feet per minute, and more preferably about 10,000 feet per minute) flowing through the conduit ducts, it is believed that a pressure differential or low pressure zone is created between the pressure in the flow channel and the pressure in the conduit duct adjacent to or below the ports. Because of the pressure differential created by the movement of the column of air and the angular velocity and mass-derived momentum of the fibers, the fibers tend to pull away from the disintegrating element and be directed along the pathway created by the tapered edge of the upstream edge of the port while they are being drawn into the first conduit duct as a result of the pressure differential. Thus the fibers need not be split-off by the mechanical action of a doctor's edge, but are split-off as a result of air and fiber momentum, thereby minimizing clumping due to the absence of mechanical edges or walls.

The stream of fibers which is drawn into the conduit duct subsequently becomes entrained in the column of air, the resultant stream of air-entrained fibers being directed downstream and out of the discharge outlet into the corresponding deposition chute. This process is repeated along each of the ports so as to create multiple, independent streams of air-entrained fibers.

The deposition chutes provide a means for directing streams of air-entrained fibers from the splitter chute 32 to one of the airlaying means and for depositing the fibers onto the airlaying means. The deposition chutes also preferably decelerate the air-entrained fiber streams and orient the fiber streams from the discharge outlets to be compatible with the width and location of the airlaying means.

The deposition chutes may comprise any members that are known in the art that are capable of performing the above functions. Preferably, the deposition chutes comprise ducts that are designed so as to decelerate the fiber streams while minimize clumping of the fibers during their reorientation from the splitter chute to the airlaying means. The deposition chute should be designed to provide a reduction in air speed with a minimum of chute contraction and expansion angles. Preferably, the chutes provide about a two-thirds reduction in air speed and more preferably reduce the air speeds by a factor of 3 so that the fibers do not impact the laydown drum at a high velocity. Thus, the walls of the deposition chutes should have various curves and tapers to provide a gradually increasing cross-sectional area to reduce the velocity of the fiber streams. The deposition

chutes preferably have a rectangular cross-sectional area.

As shown in FIG. 7, the first deposition chute 36 preferably comprises a "Y-shaped" configuration so as to merge the first and third fiber streams into a primary or combined fiber stream. Preferably, the first deposition chute 36 is designed to minimize the turbulence encountered with the merging of the two fiber streams. Thus, this chute preferably uses a fifth order polynomial curve profile or other profiles having their first and second derivative equal to zero so as to blend the fiber streams into a single stream.

As shown in FIG. 1, the apparatus 20 and more particularly the first deposition chute 36, is preferably provided with a means for providing discrete particles of absorbent gelling material. The absorbent gelling material injection apparatus 40 or means mixes discrete particles of absorbent gelling material with the combined or primary stream of air-entrained fibers prior to the deposition of the stream onto the first airlaying means. An exemplary type of injection means is shown in U.S. Pat. No. 4,551,191 issued to Ronald W. Kock and John A. Esposito on Nov. 5, 1985, said patent being herein incorporated by reference. The injection means preferably comprises a hopper (not shown) for storing a quantity of absorbent gelling material, a feed device (not shown) for metering the release of absorbent gelling material through an inlet duct 172 into an eductor 174 which entrains the absorbent gelling material in air, and a spreading duct 176 which provides air-entrained absorbent gelling material particles to the fiber streams. The absorbent gelling material is then entrained in and mixed with the fiber streams before the admixture is deposited on the laydown drum. Any other suitable injection means as are known in the art may also be used for the invention. In addition, any of the other deposition chutes may be provided with absorbent gelling material injection means as are required.

The uniting means or apparatus provide a means for uniting the web components. "Uniting" is used herein to denote that the webs are brought together in direct or indirect relationships to form an airlaid fibrous web. While many uniting apparatus are known in the art, a preferred uniting apparatus comprises a pair of uniting rolls upon which a continuous stream of unwrapped insert core components are directed to be positioned adjacent the shaped core components 1008.

Any other uniting means, including embodiments wherein the insert core components are blown-off of the first airlaying means directly onto the shaped core components, are also contemplated by the present invention.

The first and second airlaying means or apparatus, for forming fibrous webs are shown in FIG. 1 to preferably comprise drum-type airlaying apparatus. While the airlaying apparatus of the present invention may alternatively comprise a number of different configurations such as a moving foraminous screen, a drum-type airlaying apparatus is especially preferred. Typical drum-type airlaying apparatus useful in the present invention are shown in U.S. Pat. No. 4,388,056, issued to F. B. Lee and O. Jobs, Jr., on June 14, 1983, and U.S. patent application Ser. No. 576,098, filed on Feb. 1, 1984 by B. R. Feist, J. E. Carstens and D. A. Peterson, both of which are herein incorporated by reference. While the present invention can be practiced using a drum-type airlaying apparatus either which forms an end-use or continuous web or which forms discrete webs or arti-

cles, the following description will be related to a drum-type airlaying apparatus for making discrete fibrous webs.

The first drum-type airlaying apparatus 34 is shown in FIG. 1 to comprise a first deposition or laydown drum 100 having a foraminous forming element (not shown) disposed about the drum's periphery; a first scarfing roll 102; a first blow-off means or nozzle 104; a first take-away conveyor 62 disposed about mounting rolls 106; and a first transfer vacuum box 108 positioned beneath the upper run of the take-away conveyor 62. The second drum-type airlaying apparatus 46 preferably comprises a second deposition or laydown drum 110 having a foraminous forming element (not shown); a second scarfing roll 112; a second blow-off means or nozzle 114; a second take-away conveyor 66 disposed about mounting rolls 116; and a second transfer vacuum box 118 positioned beneath the upper run of the second take-away conveyor 66. Means not shown in FIG. 1 include means for driving the drums, differential pressure means including a vacuum plenum duct, fan and a fan drive to draw fiber-depleted air through either the foraminous forming elements and to exhaust the air out of the drum through a duct.

Thus, the apparatus 20 provides a means for converting an endless length or roll of drylap material into a succession of fibrous webs for use as absorbent cores in disposable diapers, catamenial napkins and the like. As shown in FIG. 1, a roll of drylap material 24 is unrolled into a sheet which is advanced to the disintegrator 26 by the pair of counter-rotating metering infeed rolls 22. An inlet opening 80 in the housing 30 of the disintegrator 26 receives the fibrous sheet and guides it to the inner end of the housing 30 where the edge of the fibrous sheet is disintegrated into a column of fibers disposed across the axial width of the housing 30. The column of fibers is directed around the flow channel 78 by the pumping action of the disintegrating element 28 to the splitter chute 32. The column of fibers is split into multiple fiber streams that are entrained in air by the splitter chute 32, the air-entrained fiber streams being directed out of the splitter chute 32 into the deposition chutes.

A dusting layer fiber stream 56 is directed through the dusting layer deposition chute 42 to the first laydown drum 100 where the fibers are deposited on the foraminous forming element of the first laydown drum 100. Preferably, a first fiber stream 54 and a third fiber stream (not shown) are merged in and directed through the first deposition chute 36 where the combined or primary fiber stream is mixed with discrete particles of absorbent gelling material that are injected into the first deposition chute 36 by the absorbent gelling material injection apparatus 40. The resultant admixture is directed to the first laydown drum 100, whereupon the fiber/absorbent gelling material admixture is deposited and collected on the foraminous forming element over the dusting layer, downstream of the position where the dusting layer was formed. The fiber-depleted entrainment air is drawn through the foraminous forming element by the vacuum maintained behind the foraminous forming element. The resultant first web component is then transferred to the first take-away conveyor 62 by the blow-off nozzle 104 and the transfer vacuum box 108 located under the conveyor belt. The second web component is preferably formed in a similar manner as the first web component by directing a second fiber stream 58 through the second deposition chute 48, by

depositing and collecting the second fiber stream 8 on the foraminous forming element of the second laydown drum 100; and by transferring the resultant second web component onto a second take-away conveyor 66.

Before uniting the web components, the web components may be finished by different operations such as calendaring, enwrapping or reinforcing the webs as are known in the art. As shown in FIG. 1, the first web component is enwrapped in tissue by means of a folding board, whereupon the continuous stream of enwrapped first core components is directed to the uniting rolls. The web components are then united by directing the continuous stream of enwrapped first web components over the uniting means or rolls 52 whereupon they are brought into contact with the second web components. Other converting operations as desired may then be effected upon the resultant fibrous web downstream from the uniting means or rolls 52 to produce a finished disposable absorbent article such as a disposable diaper.

FIG. 9 shows an enlarged sectional view of a preferred embodiment of the first drum-type airlaying apparatus 34 of the present invention. As shown in FIG. 9, the apparatus for forming fibrous webs having discrete particles dispersed therein or having a multiplicity of layers preferably comprises a laydown drum 100 having a foraminous forming element consisting of a plurality of formation cavities 120 circumferentially spaced about the periphery of the drum 100. The number of cavities 120 can be varied depending upon the size of the drum 100 or the size of the webs to be formed. In the embodiment shown, the drum 100 contains six cavities. A plurality of ribs 122 are mounted within the interior of the drum 100 to define a dusting layer vacuum chamber 124, a first or primary vacuum chamber 126, a hold-down vacuum chamber 128, and a blow-off chamber 130 having a blow-off means or nozzle 104. Each of the vacuum chambers is connected to a suitable source of vacuum (not shown) by vacuum ducts (not shown). The apparatus also preferably comprises a dusting layer deposition means such as a dusting layer deposition chute 42 and hood 44 for directing a dusting layer stream of air-entrained fibers to a dusting layer sector 132 of the laydown drum 100. The dusting layer hood 38 has a first sector 134 that circumferentially spans the entire dusting layer vacuum chamber 124 and a second sector 135 that circumferentially spans a portion of the first vacuum chamber 126. A first or primary deposition means such as a first deposition chute 36 and hood 38 for directing a first stream of air-entrained fibers to a first sector 136 of the laydown drum 100 is also shown in FIG. 9, the first hood 38 having sufficient circumferential span to enclose the remaining portion of the first vacuum chamber 126. The apparatus further comprises a scarfing roll 102; a sealing roll 137; and a take-away conveyor 62 having an endless stream of discrete fibrous webs 138 or insert core components moving on the conveyor 62.

A critical feature of this invention is that the first vacuum chamber 126 is disposed not only subjacent the entire first hood 38 but also under the downstream or second section 136 of the dusting layer hood 44 so that approximately equal pressures are established adjacent the intersection point 140 of the hoods. Since each of the hoods preferably has a circumferential span of one complete cavity 120 (measured from the edge of a first cavity to the same edge of a second cavity) or approximately 60 degrees for a six cavity drum, the first vacuum chamber 126 must have a circumferential span of

greater than one chamber or about 75 degrees for the embodiment shown in FIG. 9. Although the circumferential span of that portion of the first vacuum chamber 126 under the dusting layer hood 44 (i.e. the circumferential span of the second sector 136 of the dusting layer hood 44) has not been found to be particularly critical, there should be sufficient circumferential span as to allow a minimal transition zone between the dusting layer hood 44 and the first hood 38. This minimal circumferential span decreases as the number of cavities 120 increases and increases as the number of cavities 100 decreases.

Another critical feature is that a small gap 142 must exist between the outer surface of the laydown drum 100 and the point of intersection 140 of the hoods to allow for equalization of pressure in the portions of each hood adjacent the intersection point. If no gap existed, then there could be differential pressures in each hood so that as the drum brought the edge of the dusting layer into the first hood 38, this pressure differential could cause the dusting layer to lift off of the screen or shear. If the gap is too large, the two deposition chutes essentially merge into one and the independent dusting layer concept is not achieved. Thus a gap 142 of not more than about one-half inch is desirable with a one-eighth inch gap being preferable so that the pressure may equalize in each portion of each hood that is adjacent to the intersection point 140.

Another important design criteria is that each of the hoods should have a relatively wide circular taper near the intersection point 140 so that the fibers that are directed toward the laydown drum in this area do not impinge on the dusting layer at an acute angle. When fibers impinge upon the dusting layer at an acute angle, the fibers have a component of velocity which is parallel to the surface of the drum, thus the fibers tend to cause the fibers constituting the dusting layer to lift or shear. The critical shear velocity has been determined to be about 4000 feet per minute; the chute geometry being designed with this as a limiting factor. Thus it is desirable that the fibers impinge upon the fibers of the dusting layer at an angle as close to perpendicular as possible because the shear component would not exist. Thus, each of the hoods should have a relatively wide circular taper so that the fibers do not impinge upon the dusting layer at an acute angle or exceed the critical shear velocity. As shown in FIG. 9, each of the hoods has about a three inch radius of curvature adjacent the intersection point.

The operation of the apparatus is as follows. The dusting layer stream of fibers is directed toward a circumferential span or dusting layer section 132 of the periphery of the laydown drum 100 through the dusting layer deposition chute 42 and the dusting layer hood 44. The circumferential span preferably being equal to the span of one cavity 120 or about 60° degrees if six cavities 120 are used. The fibers are deposited onto the foraminous forming element of one of the cavities 120 on the drum 100 while the entrainment air is being drawn through the foraminous forming element by the vacuum maintained in the dusting layer vacuum chamber 124 as well as by the vacuum maintained in the primary or first vacuum chamber 126. Thus the dusting layer is formed by the collected fibers on the foraminous forming element.

As the drum rotates, the dusting layer passes from the influence of the dusting hood 44 to the influence of the first hood 38 where a first stream of air-entrained fibers

are being directed generally radially toward the periphery of the drum. However, it should be noted that the dusting layer has already been transferred to the influence of the first vacuum chamber 126 prior to passing between the hoods such that the pressure differential and velocity of the first stream do not have a tendency to shear the dusting layer apart. The fibers of the first fiber stream are thus deposited over the dusting layer while the entrainment air is drawn through the foraminous forming element by the vacuum maintained in the primary or first vacuum chamber 126. The first or primary layer is formed by the collected fiber/AGM admixture over the dusting layer. Since the dusting layer is substantially left intact, discrete particles of absorbent gelling material do not tend to be drawn through the foraminous forming element nor plug it due to the block effect of having a layer of fibers already covering the void spaces in the foraminous forming element.

The resultant fibrous web then passes under the scarfing roll 102 where the web is leveled. The fibrous web 138 or insert core component is then transferred to the take-away conveyor 62 by the joint action of the blow-off nozzle 104 and the vacuum maintained underneath the conveyor belt. The fibrous web 138 is then conveyed downstream to subsequent converting operations to produce a finished disposable absorbent articles such as a disposable diaper.

While particular embodiments of the present invention have been illustrated and described, it would be obvious to those skilled in the art that various changes and modifications can be made without departing from the spirit and scope of the invention. It is intended to cover, in the appended claims, all such modifications and intended uses.

What is claimed is:

1. An absorbent article comprising:

a topsheet;
a liquid impervious backsheet associated with said topsheet; and

a dual-layer absorbent core disposed between said topsheet and said backsheet, said dual-layer absorbent core comprising:

(i) a shaped core component that quickly collects and distributes discharged body liquids, and

(ii) an insert core component that absorbs and retains discharged body fluids from said shaped core component, said shaped core component being positioned between said topsheet and said insert core component, said insert core component comprising:

(a) a dusting layer consisting of hydrophilic fiber material, and

(b) a primary layer consisting of a combination of hydrophilic fiber material and particular amounts of discrete particles of absorbent gelling material overlaid over said dusting layer,

wherein said dusting layer is relatively thinner in thickness than said primary layer, and wherein said dusting layer is disposed adjacent said backsheet.

2. The absorbent article of claim 1 wherein said primary layer comprises a uniform combination of hydrophilic fiber material and particular amounts of discrete particles of absorbent gelling material.

3. The absorbent article of claim 2 wherein said hydrophilic fiber material consists of cellulose fibers.

4. The absorbent article of claim 3 wherein said insert core component has a top surface area from about 0.25 to about 1.0 times that of said shaped core component.

5. The absorbent article of claim 4 wherein said insert core component is positioned relative to said backsheet in a manner such that at least about 75% of the absorbent gelling material in said primary layer is found within the front two-thirds section of said absorbent article.

6. The absorbent article of claim 5, wherein said primary layer contains from about 9% to about 60% by weight of said primary layer of discrete particles of absorbent gelling material.

7. The dual-layer absorbent core of claim 6 wherein said shaped core component consists essentially of hydrophilic fiber material and from about 0% to about 8% by weight of said shaped core component of discrete particles of absorbent gelling material.

8. An absorbent article comprising:
a topsheet;
a liquid impervious backsheet associated with said topsheet; and

an absorbent core disposed between said topsheet and said backsheet, said absorbent core comprising:

(a) a dusting layer consisting of hydrophilic fibrous material, and

(b) a primary layer consisting of a combination of hydrophilic fibrous material and particular amounts of discrete particles of absorbent gelling material overlaid over said dusting layer, wherein said dusting layer is relatively thinner in thickness than said primary layer, and wherein said dusting layer is positioned adjacent said backsheet.

9. The absorbent article of claim 8 wherein said primary layer consists of a uniform combination of hydrophilic fibrous material and particular amounts of discrete particles of absorbent gelling material.

10. The absorbent article of claim 9 wherein said hydrophilic fibrous material comprises cellulose fibers.

* * * * *

UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE
CERTIFICATE OF CORRECTION

PATENT NO. : 4,888,231

Page 1 of 2

DATED : December 19, 1989

INVENTOR(S) : JOHN J. ANGSTADT

It is certified that error appears in the above-identified patent and that said Letters Patent is hereby corrected as shown below:

Column 1, Line 39,	"Dawn I. Houghton" should read ---Dawn I. Houghton---.
Column 3, Line 31,	"Dawn I. Houghton" should read ---Dawn I. Houghton---.
Column 3, Line 34,	"hold and distribute discharge" should read ---hold and distribute discharged---.
Column 3, Line 50,	"1008 absorbs discharge" should read ---1008 absorbs discharged---.
Column 5, Line 4,	"the term "disintegrator" s" should read ---the term "disintegrator" is---.
Column 6, Line 63,	"However, alternative preferred slitting" should read ---However, alternative preferred splitting---.
Column 9, Line 15,	"Thus it is preferably" should read ---Thus it is preferable---.
Column 9, Line 58,	"it is preferably" should read ---it is preferable--.
Column 12, Line 14-15,	rotating in a comput-er-clockwise direction" should read ---rotating in a computer-clockwise direction--.
Column 12, Line 20,	"plate 708, the inlet" should read ---plate 708; the inlet---.
Column 16, Line 1,	"stream 8" should read ---stream 58---.

UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE
CERTIFICATE OF CORRECTION

PATENT NO. : 4,888,231

Page 2 of 2

DATED : December 19, 1989

INVENTOR(S) : John J. Angstadt

It is certified that error appears in the above-identified patent and that said Letters Patent is hereby corrected as shown below:

Column 18, Line 26, "disposable absorbent articles" should read
----disposable absorbent article---.

Signed and Sealed this
Sixteenth Day of June, 1992

Attest:

DOUGLAS B. COMER

Attesting Officer

Acting Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks